

THE  
DIPLOMATIST'S HANDBOOK  
FOR  
AFRICA

*Ch. Hinkley*





MERENS STEEK

17 DEC. 1941

UNIV. SA.

Klasnr. 27A45(8)

Register 69127

THE  
DIPLOMATIST'S HANDBOOK

FOR

AFRICA

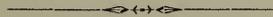
BY

COUNT CHARLES KINSKY.

*Semper aliquid novi ex Africa.*

---

WITH A POLITICAL MAP.



LONDON  
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & Co. Lim.

PATERNOSTER HOUSE,  
CHARING CROSS ROAD.

1897.

---

All rights reserved.

---

## Preface.

---

Africa, with its wild, virginal hunting fields and its heart of mystery, that has still to yield up its secrets to the explorer, has at all times excited a lively interest in me.

Many of my friends and acquaintances have made it the scene of their travels or the field for their exertions, more than one to find there, alas an untimely grave.

The various reports having served to strengthen my conviction in the ultimate and supreme mission of the dark continent as the source from which exhausted Europe would draw that vitality necessary for its future nourishment, the range of my enquiry naturally became increased, and I missed no opportunity to collect and note down thoroughly reliable information.

Soon afterwards it became my duty to make myself acquainted with African affairs, and I also seized this occasion to enrich my knowledge and complete my notes.

And here I cannot refrain from putting on record my indebtedness, first and foremost, to my valued friend, Professor Dr. Paulitschke, Private Lecturer at the Vienna University. It is to his clear and comprehensive lectures, based upon concise and intimate knowledge, as well as to the study of the literature recommended by him, that I owe an accurate and reliable insight into the social and political relations prevailing in Africa.

In my opinion, a general survey of the African question forms the only true basis for any further detailed knowledge.

I therefore cherish the hope that this short compilation of the chief points of interest concerning the separate territories of Africa, as I have endeavored to reproduce them in this work, will be of some practical use at least to those who wish to obtain information speedily.

This work is intended as a *vade mecum*, which should partly serve to give a general idea of,

1. Where the different civilised powers of Europe have taken a firm footing on African soil;
2. The historical part played by them in the course of time concerning the different territories from which actual or presumed rights may possibly be deduced;
3. How and by what treaties and agreements the Powers concerned have decided upon their mutual frontiers and spheres of power.

On the other hand, the method followed should serve to render the work convenient for reference. The work may have its deficiencies; but the reader, desiring to collect further details based upon more circumstantial accounts, will at least have been set upon the right path.

In the time in which we live events develop themselves with astonishing rapidity. Nowhere is this more the case than in the far Orient, as well as in Africa; so much so that the condition of things prevailing in these remote countries, which not long ago played a comparatively unimportant rôle in European politics, is seen to be exerting an ever-increasing and powerful influence upon the mutual relations of the European powers.

That the African continent is portioned out amongst European nations is perfectly true, but the precise definition of these territories, the process of acquisition and securing, the establishment of title deed, not to mention a world of minor question are matters by no means finally disposed of and are

destined to continue of eventful and paramount importance to Africa as well as to Europe for some time to come.

Setting aside everything else, the proper significance of the terms «Possessed», «Occupied territory», «Protectorate», «Sphere of interest», etc., may be said to be still undetermined in some parts of Africa. We have therefore yet to look forward to much technical and diplomatic work connected with boundary commissions, missions and the conclusion of treaties.

In my opinion there are still 12 distinct points which will shortly have to be considered, viz.:

1. Egypt (Turkey, England, France, Italy, Abyssinia).
2. The Southern Frontier of Tripolis (France, Turkey or Egypt).
3. Morocco, East and South (France, Spain).
4. Rio d'Oro (Morocco, France and Spain).
5. The Gold Coast Hinterland (France and Germany).
6. The Togo Hinterland (England, France and Germany).
7. The North-West of the British River Niger possessions. (England, France and Germany).
8. North Ubangi (England, France and Turkey as well as Egypt).
9. Barotseland (England and Portugal).
10. Manica Plain (England and Portugal).
11. North of British East-Africa (France, England and Turkey as well as Egypt).
12. The Southern and Western Frontiers of French Somali-land (France, Italy and Abyssinia).

In revising my notes before committing them to print, I have had recourse to the best sources only, keeping the circumstance consistently in view that the lion's share of African possessions falls necessarily to Great Britain, whose historical data I have accepted to a large extent as authoritative and final. These I have not failed to mention where they appeared

to be of interest and importance. In making my compilation, I have largely used such publications as «The Population of the Earth» by Supan-Wagner; «Handbook to Andree's Handatlas, 2nd Edition»; «The Statesman's Year-Book» by Scott Keltie; «The Gotha Diplomatic and Statistical Annual»; the White, Yellow, Blue and Green Books; Annual Reports; The Diplomatic and Consular Reports; Colonial Reports; Foreign-Office and Statistical Gazette; Official Handbooks for South Africa; the various «Annuaire»; Rapports Généraux; Colonial Reviews and Statistical Works in all Languages; the numerous works of explorers; and especially Petermann's Communications from Justus Perthes' Geographical Institute in Gotha; the publications of the Geographical and Colonial Societies in London, Paris, Berlin and Rome, the African daily papers, and others.

To my knowledge, there exists no short and summarized work concerning the African question. Having felt the want of it myself, I sought for it in vain. I wish to give my private notes to the public for what they are worth, hoping that they will prove as useful to others as to myself.

I have again to express my thanks to Professor Dr. Paulitschke for his careful revision of the work and for his supplementary notes, as well as for his valuable assistance in designing the General Political Map of Africa, which I trust will prove useful in completing the information contained in the second Edition of my book of reference.

*Dresden*, May, 1897.

Ch. K.

# I N D E X.

---

	Page
Preface . . . . .	III to VI
Egypt . . . . .	1
Madhi's Dominion . . . . .	5
Tripolis . . . . .	8
Tunis . . . . .	10
Algiers . . . . .	12
Morocco . . . . .	15
Spanish Presidios, Rio d'Oro, Canary Islands . . . . .	18
Madeira, Azores, Cape Verde Islands . . . . .	19
Senegambia . . . . .	21
French Soudan . . . . .	24
French Guinea, Ivory Coast . . . . .	26
Portugese Guinea . . . . .	28
British West African Possessions . . . . .	29
British Gambia . . . . .	30
Sierra Leone . . . . .	30
Gold Coast . . . . .	31
Lagos . . . . .	33
Liberia . . . . .	34
Togoland . . . . .	35
Dahomey . . . . .	36
Niger Coast Protectorate . . . . .	38
Niger Territories . . . . .	38
The Independent States of Central Soudan . . . . .	41
Cameroon . . . . .	43
Spanish possessions in Gulf of Guinea and on the Gaboon . . . . .	45
Portugese possession in the Gulf of Guinea . . . . .	46
French Congo . . . . .	46
The Congo State . . . . .	49
Portugese possession in Lower Guinea . . . . .	54
Ascension, Tristan da Cunha, Walfish Bay . . . . .	56
St. Helena . . . . .	57
German South West Africa . . . . .	57

## VIII

---

	Page
Cape Colony . . . . .	59
Bechuanaland . . . . .	63
Rhodesia, British Zambesia . . . . .	65
British Central Africa . . . . .	67
British Central Africa protectorate, Nyassaland . . . . .	69
Basutoland . . . . .	70
Natal . . . . .	70
Zululand, Tongaland . . . . .	71
Orange Republic . . . . .	72
South African Republic . . . . .	73
Portugese East Africa . . . . .	76
Madagascar and dependencies . . . . .	78
Mauritius and dependencies . . . . .	80
Réunion and dependencies . . . . .	81
The Comores Islands . . . . .	81
Zanzibar . . . . .	82
German East Africa . . . . .	84
British East Africa . . . . .	86
British Possession in Somaliland and Sokotra . . . . .	89
French possession in the Gulf of Aden . . . . .	91
Italian possession in North East Africa . . . . .	93
Abyssinia . . . . .	97
Geographical Register . . . . .	101

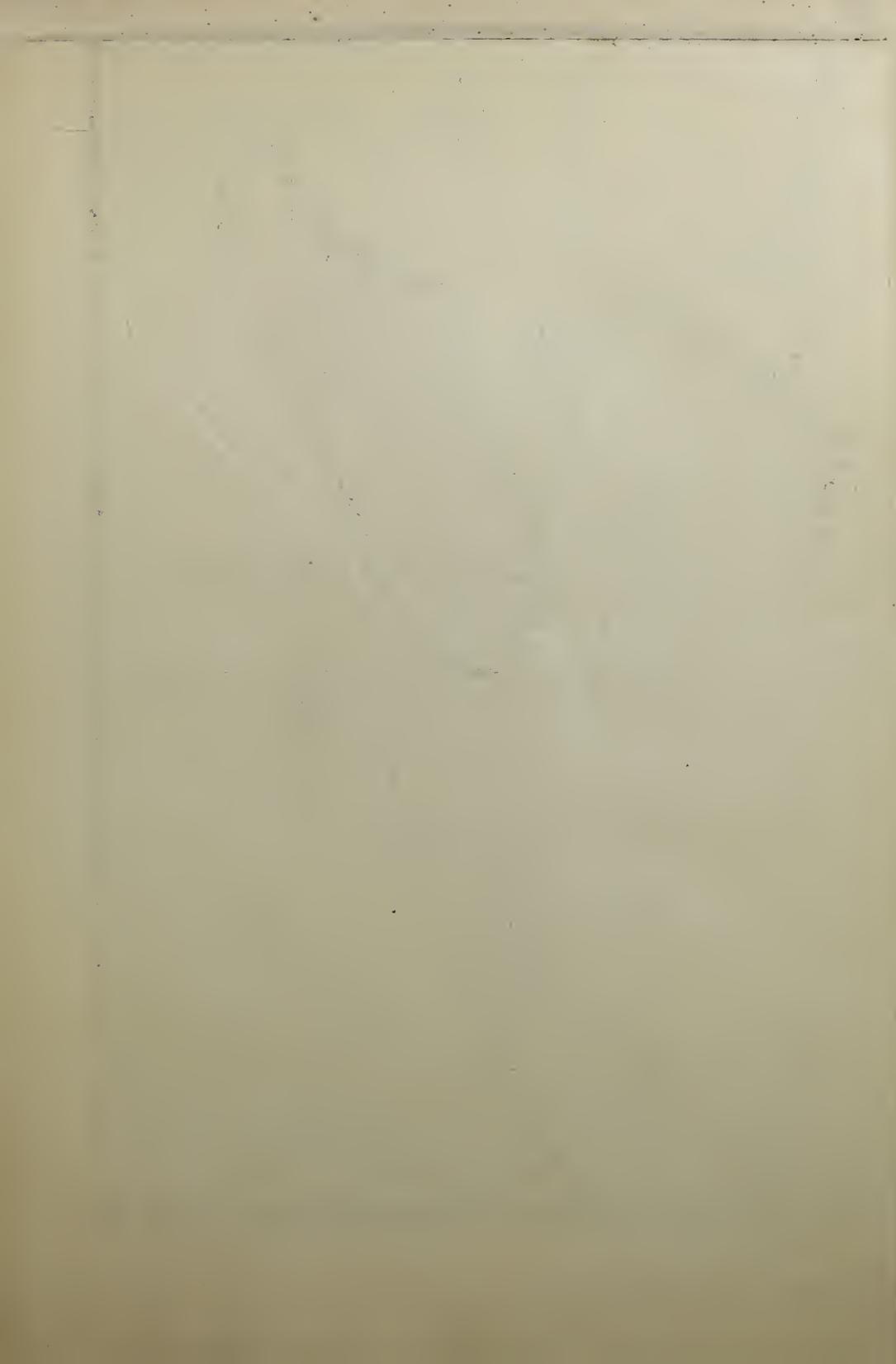
---

## K e y.

---

The introduction to the chapters is by geographical marginal notes:

- No. 1. **Official territorial titles** of the respective countries.
  - No. 2. **Frontiers** and circumference of same.
  - No. 3. **Surface** in square metres or square miles.
  - No. 4. **Population** (actual and relative).
  - No. 5. **Divisions** (together with districts). Classification of same.
  - No. 6. **Possession** (whether actual possession, protectorate or sphere of influence and extent of same).
  - No. 7. **History** in chronological order.
  - No. 8. **Treaties** and special diplomatic events (**Ambassadorial journeys**).
  - No. 9. **Proposed regulation** of frontiers and results obtained.
  - No. 10. **Government, Administration, Varia**.
- ∧ signifies that the syllable is **long and accented**.  
— signifies a **long unaccented** / a **short and accented syllable**.
-



# POLITICAL DIVISION OF AFRICA 1897.

Count Charles Kinsky, The Diplomats Handbook for Africa.



# Egypt.

*Kemi, Misr, Aegypten, Égypte, Egitto.*

Official title.

The *Western Frontier* is formed by the Bay of Solûm on the Mediterranean Sea, the *South-East Frontier* by Cape (Râs) Kasâr, on the Red Sea, 18° 2' North Latitude. The *South Frontier* is formed by the points Merâwi and Debbeh (18° 30' North Latitude), to which the Anglo-Egyptian Army has so far confined its line of advance since the conquest of Dongola in the summer of 1896. The *South-West Frontier*, starting from the Bay of Solûm, is regarded as dividing the Libyan Desert in such a manner as to bring the centre of the Snussijâ (Jarabûb Oasis) and also the Oases of Farâfrah and Dakhel under Egyptian rule. Owing to the present unsettled state of affairs in the Soudân, the frontier towards the *South-East*, in the Nubian Desert, is undefined.

Frontiers.

The Egyptian Soudân embraced formerly the provinces of Nubia, Sennaâr, Taka, Kordofân, Dâr Fûr and the territories on the right and left banks of the Nile, as far as the Equatorial Lakes, but without definitely fixed boundaries (see page 5 "*The Mahdi's Dominion*" and page 86 "*Imperial British East Africa*").

*Superficial Area*: 935,300 sq. km., to 1,300,000 sq. km. (1881, 2,986,900 sq. km.); usually estimated at 994,300 sq. km.

Area.

*Cultivated Land*: 29,120 sq. km. English official statements give the superficial area of Egypt to-day in round numbers as 400,000 square miles (1 square mile = 2.5898945 sq. km.; 1 sq. km. = 0.3861161 square mile) of which 12,976 miles were already cultivated in the year 1896.

**Population.** From an official return made at the beginning of May, 1894, Egypt (Suakim and the Soudân excluded) contained 7,739,000 inhabitants (110,400 foreigners, including 8,000 British soldiers). The last census, taken May 3rd, 1882, returned 6,400,000 inhabitants, of whom 90,886 were foreigners, an average of about 7 persons to the sq km. Including the inhabitants of the Soudân, the total population was returned at not less than 16 millions.

**Divisions.** Egypt is divided into 2 parts: (*a*) Misr-el-bahri, which is Lower Egypt or the Delta; (*b*) El Saïd, or Upper Egypt. These two parts embrace five governmental sub-divisions (Mohafzas): 1. Suez Canal (Suez, Port Saïd, Ismailia), 2. Cairo, 3. Alexandria, 4. Rosetta and 5. Damietta, and sixteen Provinces or Mudirieh. These are again subdivided into districts (Markaz, Kism), which are formed out of Nahiehs or Communities. The coast of the Red Sea, with Suakin, Kosseir, El Arish, and the Sinai Peninsula, is included in the jurisdiction of the Suez Canal.

**Possession.** The whole country is a tributary state of Turkey. For the "Sphere of Interest" of Turkey, see page 8.

**History.** From 3892-525 B. C. an independent nation.  
 „ 525-333 B. C. subject to Persia.  
 „ 333-323 B. C. subject to Greece (Alexander the Great).  
 „ 323-30 B. C. period of the Ptolemæans.  
 „ 30 B. C.—638 A. D. subject to Rome.  
 „ 638 A. D.—1517 A. D. Mohammedan Dynasties.

1517 A. D. Egypt was conquered by the Turkish Sultan, Selim I, and turned into a Turkish Pashalic.

The last Egyptian monarch, Mutawakkil, conferred upon Selim I. the dignity of a Chalifa.

1798, July 1st, Napoleon Buonaparte entered and took possession of the country. May 1799, Upper Egypt, was conquered by

the French, who held Egypt till September 1801, when they evacuated it, and the Turks again took possession.

From 1801 to 1811, Egypt was under the actual rule of about 500 Mamaluke princes.

1805, August 3rd, Mohammed Ali in Egypt.

1806, Mohammed Ali established as Governor, and in 1811 as absolute ruler. 1819 and following years, Mohammed Ali conquers Nubia and Sennaâr (1820—1825) and Kordofân (1821).

By the Hattisherif of February 13th, 1841, Mohammed Ali acquires hereditary succession.

1848, Investiture of Ibrâhîm Pasha, Mohammed Ali's stepson.

1849, August 2nd, Death of Mohammed Ali, who had become insane.

1849—1853, Abbâs Pasha, Khedive.

1854—1863, Saïd Pasha, Khedive.

1863, January 2nd, Ismâil Pasha ascends the Throne.

1866, By the Firmân of May 27th, Ismail Pasha receives the rank and title of Khidêwi-Misr, i. e. "Viceroy of Egypt", and the right of "direct descent from the father to the eldest son", in consideration of a yearly tribute of 575,000 *l.* (Egyptian).

1869, November 16th: Opening of the Suez Canal.

1873, The Firmân of June 8th, confers upon the Khedive the right of coinage and of the issue of loans, the right to independent administration of Justice, to conclude treaties with Foreign Powers, and to form an army of 30,000 men. The tribute to be raised to 669,175 *l.* (Egyptian).

1874, Conquest of Dâr Fûr by Sibêr Pasha.

1875, The "Tribunaux mixtes" take the place of consular jurisdiction.

1875, Conquest of the Somâli Coast and Harar.

1876, April, Introduction of the "Caisse de la Dette Publique".

1879, June 26th, Ismail Pasha is deposed. (Died March, 12th 1895, at Constantinople) and is succeeded by his son Taufyk.

1879, November 10th, Egypt by Khedival Decree put under the general control of France and England (rescinded by Khedival Decree of January 18th, 1883).

1881, February 1st, Rebellion under Colonel Ahmed Arabi Bey in Cairo.

1881, Summer, The Mahdi's first appearance in the Soudân.

1882, May 20th, British and French Squadrons before Alexandria.

1882, June 8th, A Turkish Special-Envoy sent to Egypt.

1882, July 11th and 12th, Bombardment of Alexandria, before the commencement of which the French withdraw.

1882, September 13th, Battle of Tel-el-Kebir: defeat of Arabi Pasha.

1882, November 5th, Mr. Gladstone's declaration in the House of Commons that English troops would remain in Egypt to maintain order. Lord Dufferin had already been sent to Cairo, October 31st, 1882. (British Occupation.)

1883, January 18th, Khedival Decree regarding the nomination of a British Financial adviser ("without whose concurrence no financial decision can be taken").

1883, November 3rd, Hicks Pasha's Army annihilated by the Mahdi near Kashgil. El Obeid, the Capital of Kordofân, falls into the hands of the Mahdists.

1884, June, The Mahdi's troops conquer Nubia as far as Berber, after Baker Pasha's defeat by Osmân Digna near El Teb on February 4th, 1884.

1885, January 26th, Fallof Khartoum and death of General Gordon.

1885, May 26th, Evacuation of Harar. — December 24th, Ghâsi Mukhtar Pasha sent to Egypt.

1888, December 5th, Emin Pasha leaves the Equatorial Province with H. M. Stanley.

1892, January 7th, Death of the Khedive Taufyk, who is succeeded by his son Abbâs II Hilmi.

1894, April, Appointment of Nubar Pasha's Ministry.

1896, May, The expedition against the Mahdi begins with an advance on and the conquest of Dongola, which is subsequently divided into two Mudirieh.

Capital: *Cairo*, 576,400 inhabitants (1896).

Varia.

## The Mahdi's Dominion.

Known in Europe as the *Egyptian Soudân*, and in Egypt as *Beled-es-Sudân* or *Mahdîja*. Official title.

The territory occupied by the followers of the Mahdi and his successors (Dervishes) embraces the former "Egyptian Soudan". It stretches from Merâwi on the Nile ( $18^{\circ} 30'$  North Latitude) to about  $10^{\circ}$  North Latitude, where the British Sphere of Interest begins (see under heading, "Imperial British East Africa"), and towards the West almost to  $23^{\circ}$  East Longitude of Greenwich as far as the East Side of the independent Sultanate of Wadâi. In the East it extends to the foot of the Abyssinian mountains, without any clearly defined boundary marks. Frontier.

The superficial area of the Mahdi's Dominion cannot be exactly defined; it may be equal to that of the Egypt of to day, but certainly does not surpass it. The one million square miles given by the British authorities as its extent should probably be reduced to one half, as their figures would include the territories of the Upper Nile, which now belong to the British Sphere of Interest. Area.

The number of inhabitants in the Egyptian Soudân has been formerly estimated — for instance in 1877 — at about 11,800,000 inhabitants. These figures have been confirmed by Population.

British authorities, but it is now generally acknowledged that three fifths of the population have since perished under the rule of Chalifa Abdullâhi. The Mahdi's Dominion therefore contains probably little more than  $8\frac{1}{4}$  millions, viz: 1 million in Nubia, 4 millions in Dâr Fûr, and 300,000 in Kordofân, the rest being distributed over the remaining territories.

**Divisions.** Lower Nubia, Upper Nubia, with Senaâr (Dschesirah) and Taka, Kordofân, Takale and Dâr Fûr. Only a very small part of the Bahr el-Ghasâl, Dâr Fertit and Dar Banda districts obey the Chalifa, viz: on the Bahr el-Arab, and on the right bank of the Nile towards Ladó.

**Possession.** The whole of this territory may be considered as actual possession; although the district of Bahr el-Ghasâl is virtually territory invaded by the Dervishes.

The Sultan of Turkey still lawfully claims the territory as an integral part of his dominion.

**History.** 1881, First appearance of the Nubian, Muhammed Ahmed, from Dongola as the Mahdi (the prophet promised by Mussulman Tradition and prophesied by Mohammed to reform and restore the Mussulman Faith to power after a lapse of 1300 years).

1882, In Sennaâr the insurrection was subdued by Abd-el-Kader, but Dshesirah soon afterwards fell into the hands of the Mahdi.

1883, (January), The Mahdi's followers storm El Obeid, the Capital of Kordofân.

1883, November 3rd, Hicks Pasha defeated by the Mahdi near Kashgil and his army annihilated.

1884, February, General Graham defeats Osman Digna at Teb and Tamâneb. — 3rd of June. Treaty by which the Bogo territories are ceded to Abyssinia.

1884, June, Death of the Mahdi and accession of the Chalifa Abdullâhi, who was to be succeeded by two other Chalifas nominated by the Mahdi, after which the descendants of Abdullâhi were to have the right to the throne.

1885, January 26th, The Chalifa Abdullâhi takes Khartoum, the Capital of the Egyptian Soudan. The attempted relief of the town by the British (Battles of Abû Klêa and Gubât) fails, the expedition arriving too late to save Gordon Pasha, who had been killed in the street fight.

1885, December, Victory of the English and Egyptians at Kobê.  
— June 30th, The Sultan of Turkey declares the Soudân to be Turkish possession.

1888, December, General Greenfell's victory over Osmân Digna near Handûb.

1891, February 18th, England reconquers Tokar.

1893, December 21st, General Baratieri's victory at Agordat.

1894, May, Anglo-Egyptian campaign against the Mahdi's Dominion. Battle of El Teb. Conquest of Dongola.

1894, July 17th, The Italians take Kassala.

The Capital and Residence of the Chalifa is *Omdurman* on the White Nile which contains about 40,000 inhabitants. Khartoum is abandoned. The present ruler over the Mahdi's Dominion, Abdullâhi Chalifet es-Sadik, reigns as Chalifa or Lieutenant Governor of the Mahdi, and therefore bears the title of Chalifa el-Mahdi.

*Varia.*

---

## Tripoli.

*Tarabulûs.* (Ottoman title of the Vilajet); *Tripoli.*

*Official title.*

The *Western Frontier* begins near Râs Tadjêr on the coast, 32 km East of the fort and of Cape El Bibân, and extends in a curve open to the East, through the Erg towards Ghadâmes, and thence through the district of the Tuareg Asgar or Asdscher towards Ederi, and South-West to Ghât. The Oases Ghadâmes and Ghât thus belong

*Frontiers.*

to Tripoli and maintain Ottoman garrisons. The *South Frontier* extends (including the Oasis Fezzân), from Ghât across the Oasis Tegeri, excluding the Kufra Oases, where no Turkish troops are yet garrisoned. The *East Frontier* extends West of the Kufra group of Oases from the South Northwards to Jarabub, which belongs to Egypt, and reaches the Mediterranean Sea at the Gulf of Solûm near Râs el-kunâis.

**Area.** The *superficial area* of the country known as Tripoli is between 1,003,000 sq. km. and 1,213,400 sq. km. (398,738 square miles according to British estimates), of which the greater part is uncultivated, and belongs properly speaking to the Sahara and Lybian Deserts.

**Population.** *Population:* 1,300,000 (according to estimates); giving one person to the sq. km. Of these 800,000 live in Tripoli itself, (100,000 in Fezzân, 300,000 in Barka), and 500,000 in BENGHÂSI. The number of foreigners (Europeans) has only been estimated in the town of Tripoli; in 1896 they numbered 600 Italians, 20 Frenchmen, 20 Englishmen, 2 Germans, 1 Swiss, and numerous Maltese.

**Divisions.** The country is divided into two administrative districts, the Vilâjet Tripolis with the Tripolitan states (the western portion), the Oases Ghadâmes, Ghât and Fezzân, together with Sella and Sokna and the Mutissaferat BENGHÂSI, to which the regions of Barka or Cyrenaika and the Audshîla and Dshalo Oases belong.

**Possession.** The whole state forms the actual and undisputed possession of Turkey. The Western part of the Lybian Desert and the Eastern part of the Sahara, with the Taiserbo, Buseîma and Kebâbo (Kufra) Oases, the districts Tibesti or Tu, Wanjanga, Borku, Bodelê, Ennedi, the Kawâr Oasis, the district Kânem and the Sultanate Wadâi, to which the larger part of the former Baghirmi country is now tributary, are considered as a sort of international Sphere of Interest of the Ottoman Empire. The southern part of Baghirmi

however is claimed by France as belonging to its Sphere of Interest in North Ubangi. This Ottoman Sphere of Interest is bounded on the West by the caravan route from Kuka (Bornu) to Murzuq (Fezzân), on the South by Tsad-Lake, and about the 12° North Latitude, on the East by the States belonging to the Mahdi's Empire, Dâr Fûr, Kordofân, and West Nubia, as well as by Egypt. The whole of the trade of this immense territory is chiefly directed towards Tripoli and Benghâsi, and only a very small part to Egypt and the dominion of the Chalif of Omdermân.

Phœnician and Carthaginian Government; a flourishing Greek Government in Cyrenaika also. From 146 B. C. Roman government, later that of Byzantium. In the 7th and 8th Centuries A. D. conquered by the Arabs. For a short time a dependency of Sicily and Malta, then of Spain under Charles V.

History.

1551, The Turks conquer the Land.

1714, Ahmed Caramanli Pasha makes Tripoli entirely independent of the Porte, establishes the Dynasty of Caramanli, and conquers the Fezzân Oasis with the town Murzuq. From 1720, however, a tribute is paid to Turkey.

1825, The Sardinian ships "Commercio", "Tritone", "Maria Cristina", and "Nereide" bombard the town Tripoli under Captain Sivori, as Jûssûf Pasha, the last Caramanli, had demanded tribute from Sardinia.

1835, Tripoli once more becomes an exclusively Turkish possession, the Turks abolishing native government.

The country is *governed direct from Constantinople*. France has repeatedly demanded that the towns Ghadâmes and Ghât, where there are again Ottoman garrisons, should be yielded up to her. The Porte has not troubled to take any steps in the matter. — Italian achievement: — Italian schools have existed in Tripoli since 1884. They were reformed and enlarged in 1888 by Crispi. (1896:

Varia.

Children's Institute: 120 children; Girl's school: 200 children; Scuola tecnico commerciale: 35 pupils.)

There are about ten important Italian commercial houses in the country.

Capital: *Tripoli*, 30 to 35,000 inhabitants.

## Tunis.

**Official title.** *Tunisie* (French), *Tunisis*, *Afrikâjja* (Turkish).

**Frontiers.** The *Western Frontier*, beginning at Roux (Cape Roux) situated on the sea-coast East of La Calle, runs in a Southerly direction towards Tebessa, and crosses the Shott Gbars. From this point the boundary-line in the Sahara is taken as running to the South of the Shott el-dsherid in a South-Easterly direction, till it meets in the Sahara the boundary-line which proceeds from Ghadâmes towards the North. The *East frontier* reaches the sea-coast 32 km. East of El Bibân (Ras Tâdjêr). — Tunis thus embraces all the land inside this curve as far as Cape Bon.

**Area.** The *superficial area* comprises between 99,600 sq. km. and 118,000 sq. km. at the outside. By British authorities 45,000 square miles, by Italian 116,000 sq. km. and by French 129,318 sq. km. are accepted as the Area.

**Population.** Number of inhabitants: 1,500,000, i. e. about 15 persons to the sq. km. (446,400 Nomads; 45,000 Jews; 1896: 15,977 French. Altogether 110,000 Europeans, of which 11,300 men form the army of occupation).

**Divisions.** There are 22 Qaidate, or governmental subdivisions. The South is called Beled el-dsherid, viz: "Date-Land."

French Protectorate since the 22nd April, 1882, under the rule of a Resident-Minister. Possession.

Phœnician, Carthaginian, Roman, Byzantine, Vandal and Arabian Governments. Conquered by Charles V. National Dynasties. History.  
Treaties.

1575 A. D. The Turks conquer the land.

1691 A. D. The present Dynasty of the Ben Ali Turki succeeds to the government, which originates from Crete. The Bey's appointment as Regent is confirmed by the Sultan, whose vassal he continues to the present day.

1875, Convention between England and Tunis.

1881, May. The French enter the country and conclude with the Bey Sidi Muhammed es-Sadok the Treaty of Qasr es-Said on May, 12th 1881, which sanctions their remaining in the land.

1882, April 22nd. Tunis placed under French Protectorate.

1883, June 8th. Treaty with France concerning the position of Tunis with regard to international law.

1896, September 28th. Conclusion of three conventions with Italy.

1897, January 13th. Recognition by Spain of the present relation of Tunis to France.

The French "Résident-Minister" governs exclusively, assisted by two secretaries. The Royal Prerogative belongs to the Bey, who, according to the Firman of the 25th October 1871, is a vassal of the Porte, but free from tribute. A "Bureau des affaires Tunisiennes" is established in the French Foreign Office. Since 1884 French judges have presided at the Consular Court. The head of the Christian Religion is the Archbishop of Algiers under the title of "Primate of Carthagina". Varia.

Capital: *Tunis*, 153,000 inhabitants.

# Algiers.

**Official title.** *L' Algérie.*

**Frontiers.** The frontier runs in the *West* from the mouth of the Mulûja-River across the Table-land of the Shotts into the Mediterranean, cuts through the Shott el-Gharbi, and extends almost to the Tuât Oasis. *The South frontier* is not exactly fixed, but runs parallel with the 30° Latitude, as far as the vicinity of Ghadâmes, where it joins the Tripolitan and later the Tunisian Frontiers.

**Area.** The total *superficial area* is 477,913 sq. km., of which, however, only 318,334 sq. km. come under the administration of France, 189,187 sq. km. belonging to the Sahara area. The nomads roving about this vast tract number 50,000. The area of the French Sahara is calculated as covering 2,600,000 sq. km., taking into consideration the French Sphere of Interest towards the Soudan.

**Population.** 4,429,421 Inhabitants (1896), 8 persons to the sq. km. (Algiers: 1,400,000, Oran: 900,000, Constantine: 1,700,000). There are 259,729 Frenchmen in the whole country, including the military power, 44,000 Italians and 3,700,000 Mohammedans.

**Divisions.** Algiers consists of 3 provinces: Algiers, Oran, and Constantine, and of the Oases, Wargla and El-Golea.

**Possession.** The country *is looked upon as an integral part of France* and in no sense as a colony. The method of government, therefore, is totally different to that prevailing in the Colonies. — The country, as far as 30° Latitude, is in the immediate and actual possession of France. Above this point the military authorities, under the commander of the 19th Army Corps, rule a narrow stretch of the Sahara which has a roving population.

The recognised *Sphere of Interest* of France (*Franco-British Treaty of the 5th August 1890*) South of Algiers and Tunis embraces

the whole Western Sahara between Morocco and Tripoli, together with the Oases Gurâra, Tuât (Insalah) and Tidikelt, as well as the district between the caravan route of Fezzân on the Tsad Lake, and about the 12° Longitude West of Greenwich on the one side, and the land stretching from the Eastern frontier of the Spanish Protectorate of Rio d'Oro to the Niger River, and along the course of the same, as far as the Town Say, on the other. According to the treaty in question between France and England of the 5th August, 1890, this territory is further bordered towards the East by a line which runs from the Town Say on the Niger in a northerly curve in the Sahara to the Town Sinder, 15° North Latitude, and thence directly East over Guro to the West shore of the Tshad Lake near to the 14° North Latitude, so that the whole country of the Tuareg, Tuât, Tidikelt, also the Damerghu Territory and the North-West border of the Tshad Lake belong to the French Sphere of Interest. (1 million square miles superficial area.)

Carthaginian, Numidian, Roman, Byzantine, and Vandal government. Conquered by the Arabs in the 8th century. Arabian and Moorish Sovereigns. Since 1492 A. D. Moorish pirate state; from the second half of the 16th century under the nominal suzerainty of Turkey, but in reality independent. The pirates were held in check by Louis IX of France, Charles V, and Louis XIV.

History.

1708, Spain finally withdrew the garrison which had been maintained in Oran since 1492 A. D. At the head of the military republic stood the Deys, proclaimed by the Janissary, the last of whom, Hussein, surrendered to the French arms on the 5th July, 1830, and was held prisoner by the French at Alessandria in Italy till his death.

1831—1842, February. War with Abd el-Kader.

1834, July 22nd. Royal ordinance, according to which the conquered district is to be called "Possessions françaises dans le nord de l'Afrique".

1844, French war against Morocco, whither Abd el- Kader fled.

1847, December 24th Capture of Abd el-Kader.

1852—1858, Taking of Laghuat. The Beni M'zab come under French protection.

1853—1854, The Oases of Tuggurt and Wadi Sáf, as well as Wargla captured.

1858—1860, Algiers placed under a Ministry "for Algiers and the Colonies."

1862, Treaty of Ghadámes with Tuareg.

1881, Revolt of Bú Aména.

1882, November 17th, Incorporation of the Beni M'zab district.

1896, December 31st, Reorganisation of the administration.

Varia.

The French Chamber has the sole right of legislature in Algiers.  
— France protects the Moroccan Sherif of Wesân.

Capital: *Algiers*, 82,585 inhabitants.

## Morocco.

Official title.

*Maghrib el aqsá* (i. e. "Extreme West"), *el Gharb* (i. e. "the West").

Frontiers.

The Moroccan district begins on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea by the mouth of the Mulúja-River\*), and extends to the South as far as of Cape Juby (28° North Latitude). A commercial settlement was founded on this important point as early as 1764, reestablished in 1876 by the British North-West Africa Company, and having been repeatedly destroyed, was purchased by Morocco in 1895. The Spanish Protectorate of Rio d'Oro begins South of Cape Juby.  
— The *East* and *South Frontiers* are not yet defined; their

\*) Except the Spanish Presidios (see p. 17) and Ifni, near Cape Nun.

course in the Sahara, East of Cape Juby, is such that the Nomads on the banks of the River Wadis, which discharges itself into the sea between this Cape and Cape Nun, are subject to the Sultan. The line then follows the upper course of the Wadi Draa towards the North East, and in the East in the direction of the Taflet Oasis, which belongs to Morocco. Tuât with Ain Salah (Insalah) belongs already to the French Sphere of Interest. To the East of the Figig Oasis the boundary-line inclines towards the mouth of the River Mulûja.

The accounts of authorities concerning the area of the Sultan's Kingdom are, to say the least, conflicting. Whereas formerly 800,000 sq. km. were the recognised figures — which would still be correct if Tuât were included (a view apparently untenable) — one may very well put down the area, Tuât and the parts of the desert excluded, at 450,000 sq. km. (according to English estimates 219,000 square miles). Of these 439,240 sq. km. belong to the old territory and about 10,000 sq. km. to the new possession in the vicinity of Cape Juby (El Gada).

Area.

The estimated number of inhabitants in Morocco has varied since the land was first explored by Europeans between 2,500,000 and 9,400,000. The population is generally estimated at from 5 to 8 millions. 8 millions appear to be the most correct figures (about 18 persons to the sq. km.). Gerhard Rohlfs, however, gave in 1883 only 2,700,000 inhabitants. Taking the highest figures as correct, according to English estimate, the population is divided as follows: Fêz 3,200,000, Morocco 3,900,000, Taflet 800,000, Sûs and Draa territories 1,400,000. — There are about 1500 foreigners in the country.

Population.

The Dominion embraces the Sultanates of Fêz (Fâs) and Morocco (Merâkesh), formerly independent of each other, the Oases Taflet, Figig, Kenâtsa, Tazzerult, Sidshilmessa, Rif, the Wadi Sûs, Wadi Draa and Cape Juby. The Empire is divided into 44 districts or

Division.

Amâlats, at the head of which are Pashas or Qâdis. The Bedouins have their own chief, who is appointed by the Sultan.

**Possession.** The whole district is considered the actual possession of the Sultan, but his word is seldom respected by the Bedouins. There is no Moroccan Sphere of Interest.

**History.** Moorish-Carthaginian, Roman, Gothic, Vandal and Byzantine government. Arabs conquered the Land in the 8th century A. D. Piratical state. Occasionally attacked by Spain and Portugal. Under the descendant of Abbassides, Idrîs'ibn'Abdallâh, Morocco was raised to the importance of a large independent State (Dynasties: Edrisiden, Fatimiden, Omajaden of Spain, Almoraviden, Almohaden, Benî Merini of Figig, Assaniten of the Wadi Draa, and finally since 1699 A. D. Fileliten [Aliden] of Tafilet). The Empire always remained independent of the Porte.

1672 till 1727 A. D. War with Spain. — Foundation of the Presidios (see page 17).

Till 1822, A. D. Great civil war and internal crises.

1844—1847. War with France and bombardment of Tangiers, and Mogador (Battle of Dsholi). Morocco surrendered in 1847 the North-East district to Abd el-Kader.

1845, French-Moroccan treaty concerning the East frontier of the Empire.

1851, November 25th, Bombardment of Saleh by French ships.

1856, French campaign under de Colomb and Count Wimpffen against Morocco.

1859—1860, April, Renewed war with Spain and defeat of the Moroccans at Tetuân.

1894, June 6th, Sultan Mulej Hassan dies; Mulej Abd el-Aziz succeeds him.

1895, Morocco purchases the fort on Cape Juby.

The most important of the European ambassadorial journeys to Morocco, from which the greatest number of commercial treaties resulted, are:

- 1825, French Embassy under Caraman and Delaporte.
- 1829, British Embassy under Washington.
- 1830, Austrian Embassy under Pflügl and Baron Augustin.
- 1830, French Embassy under de Chasteau and Roche.
- 1856, British Embassy under Drummond Hay.
- 1863, Spanish Embassy under Don Merry and Colom.
- 1875, Italian Embassy under Edmondo de Amicis.
- 1877, German Embassy under Weber and Zembsch.
- 1882, Italian Embassy under Cremas.
- 1896, British Embassy under Sir Arthur Nicolson.

Varia.

The Sultan rules as Emir el-mumenin (i. e.: "Master of the Faithful"), but in the North-East of the Country the authority of the Sherif is also recognised. The latter is under French protection and resident in Wesân, but only exercises a religious jurisdiction.

The postal service is managed by Spain and France.

Capital of Morocco (Merâkesh) is *Fâs* (*Fèz*), 140,000 inhabitants. The foreign representatives and consuls reside in Tangiers; 30,000 inhabitants.

## Spanish Presídios, Rio d'Oro, Canaries.

### (a) *Presídios*.

Since the Moroccan wars and particularly those of the 16th century, Spain has had the right to maintain garrisons (Presídios) on the North Coast of Morocco. The necessity of maintaining them led to the acquisition of small territories around the points of *Ceuta*,

*Melilla, Velez de la Gomera* (Peñon de Velez) and *Allucemas*. They were strongly fortified and received the official name of "os presidios". The group of small *Chafarimas Islands* also belong to the "Presidios", which comprise in all a superficial area of 35 sq. km. The population in 1887 was 5,280; according to other accounts 16,000. The garrison consists of infantry regiments at Ceuta and Melilla; at Ceuta there is also a body of 50 marines and a volunteer force 100 strong. Ceuta, belonging to Cadiz, had in 1887 10,744 inhabitants, Melilla 3,538, Peñon 447, Allucemas 366, the Chafarimas 703.

In accordance with the treaty of Wad Râs of 1860 the Sultan of Morocco recognises the right of Spain to the possession of the small territory of *Santa Cruz de Mar Pequeña*, also called *Ifni* (70 sq. km., 6000 inhabitants), South of Mogador on the mouth of the Ifni River. It was surrendered in due form in October 1883. Spain has hitherto enjoyed no advantage from this Possession, but holds it temporarily.

(b) "*Subgubernorado*" of *Río d'Oro*.

Dating back to the period of the great Portuguese voyage of discovery is an old fortress, 23° 36' 18" North Latitude. During the time of the Spanish government over Portugal it fell into the hands of Spain, but in course of time it was almost abandoned. It bears the name *Río d'Oro* (Gold River), in consequence of the custom of the Portuguese discoverers of bartering for gold here with the Sahara caravans coming from the Niger territories. Starting from this point, Spain was gradually able to form a *Protectorate* out of the whole stretch of coast in the North above Cape Bojador, as far as Cape Juby, and in the South as far as Cape Blanco (Bahía del Oéste). The Bank of Arguin, however, was not included in this territory. The attempt of a German company in 1886 to erect a factory on the *Río d'Oro* called forth a protest from Spain and an assertion of her rights, followed, on the 6th April, 1887, by a

decree of the Spanish government, in which the district between Cape Blanco and Cape Bojador was declared to be Spanish territory. It was placed under the *General-Captaincy of the Canary Islands* as a "subgobornado". (Governor, a "Subgobernador Politico-Militar".)

The Uled Embarek were placed under French protection on the 14th May, 1887. In April, 1895, the Moorish tribes of Ulád Dim, Gerger and Arussin stormed the Spanish fort. Captain M. E. Boretti had already explored the neighboring district, in consequence of a *proclamation* of Alfonso XII of December 26th 1884, placing this part of Africa under permanent Spanish rule. The "*Sociedad Española de Africanistas y Colonistas*" was thus able to obtain 540 km. of sea-coast. In 1886 it regulated the Southern frontier with France. A military garrison was established and the settlement, organised upon the plan prevailing in the Spanish colonies, was placed under the colonial ministry. In 1895, the tribes of the neighbouring *Oasis territory and the Sahara of Adrar* surrendered to the Spanish government. They solicited Spanish protection, and promised to respect the safety of Europeans. The disputed district of Adrar, or at least its *Northern* part, can therefore be rightly considered as under Spanish protection. No diplomatic settlement of the Adrar question has as yet taken place. Since Panet's journey in 1850, the French have also laid claim to Adrar.

Area (700,000 sq. km.) 243,000 square miles; 100,000 inhabitants (according to other sources 500,000). Chief Station, Rio d'Oro.

(c) *The Canary Islands (Islas Canarias).*

From an administrative point of view, the Canary Islands are considered *as a part of the mother country, Spain*. 7,373 sq. km. 291,625 inhabitants, 40 to 1 th sq. km. In 1478 they were taken possession of by Spain, whose rights have never been disputed. Capital, *Santa Cruz de Tenerife*. 20,000 inhabitants.

## Madeira, the Azores and Cape Verde Islands.

The Islands of *Madeira*, the "richly wooded", and the *Azores* (Ilhas Açores or "the Hawk Islands") are treated politically and administratively as an integral part of the mother country, Portugal. *The Islands of Madeira* comprise 815 sq. km. (134,000 inhabitants, 162 to 1 the sq. km.), and the *Azores* 2,388 sq. km., (269,401 inhabitants, 113 to 1 the sq. km.). The Portuguese took possession of Madeira in 1410, but did not colonise the islands until 1421. In the group are included *Madeira*, the *Desertas*, and *Porto Santo*. Capital: *Funchal*, 20,000 inhabitants. The capital of the Azores, which were discovered and inhabited about the middle of the 15th century, is *Ponta Delgada* on the island São Miguel, with 18,000 inhabitants.

The *Ilhas do Cabo Verde*, discovered, 1455—1462, by the Portuguese Antonio da Noli, 3581 sq. km. with 110,930 inhabitants (20 to the sq. km.), are divided into an Easterly and Westerly group. Unhealthy climate. Undisputed possession of Portugal since the earliest times. The largest island is São Thiago with 1239 sq. km. and 53,000 inhabitants, on which is the capital, *Cidade de Praya*, where the governor resides.

---

## Senegambia.

Official title.

*Le Sénégal et dépendances, Sénégalie.*

Frontiers.  
Possession.

France claims the whole of North West Africa to the South of the Spanish Protectorate of Rio d'Oro and the Great Desert, also of the Senegal and Niger rivers, with the exception of the

British possessions of Gambia, Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast, Portuguese Guinea and the Liberian Republic, 4,000,000 sq. km. By the *Treaty of the 5th August, 1890*, England recognises the following frontiers of the territories under French influence in the North, South, East, and South East, viz., Algiers, Tunis (N), a line from Say on the Niger to Baruwa on the Tsad Lake (see Algiers) on the one side, and on the other a line as far South as the Upper Volta in the North of Ashanti, whence it passes to the mouth of the Assinie. *The colony on the Senegal* embraces only the North West part of this vast territory as the direct Possession of the French Republic. It lies to the South, i. e., on the left bank of the river. The official frontier between the Senegal Colony and the French Soudan forms a line from Kayes to Bumtu on the Falemé, passing along the bed of this stream as far as the frontier of Futa Dshallon, and then along the Diankolo River, which is looked upon as a continuation of the Falemé. On the coast, the territory extends from the mouth of the Senegal to that of the Salum, 13° and 21° 40' North Latitude, a distance of 1200 km.; and from the right bank of the Senegal to Arguin Bank near Cape Blanco. In the East the Colony extends from the valley of the Senegal to the Niger, i. e., as far as Segú Sikoro and Sansandig. It is scarcely possible to trace out an exact line of frontier for the *Senegal Colony*, owing to the circumstance that immediately adjoining the Senegal Colonial territory of the *French Soudan* (Soudan français p. 23) and the possessions on the Ivory Coast (*Rivières du Sud*), (which embrace a great number of French protectorate districts,) the French stations in the Senegal valley in the direction of Matam are each surrounded by an area not strictly defined, but passing as the *direct* and *actual possession* of the Republic. The natives, moreover, would not be likely to respect it, as the frontier line is subject to frequent changes.

The Senegal Colony embraces the communities of St. Louis, Divisions. Dakar, Rufisque, the Island Gorée, the Arguin, Bank and Island

the provinces N'Diandor, Gangommé, Pankoy, in the Càyor district, the territories M'Pall, Khatete, and the station Batete.

Area.  
Population.

The Senegal Colony, including that of the Rivières du Sud, is said to comprise 14,700 square miles and 174,000 to 200,000 inhabitants, of which 135,000 belong to Senegal alone. French West Africa has in all a total superficial area of 1,400,000 sq. km. Reckoning also the numerous small West-African States, which stretch from the Senegal River over Futa Dshallon (Guinée Française) down to the Ivory Coast, and either form an integral part of the French Protectorate or are considered as such, the figures would be 54,000 square miles superficial area and 1,700,000 inhabitants (1897) for the whole territory. It should be here stated that some authorities return the number of inhabitants of the Senegal Colony and the French Soudan in round numbers as 5 Millions.

History.  
Treaties.

The River Senegal and the districts at its mouth are supposed to have been discovered by the French Normans, after they had been already visited by the Carthaginians. The Portuguese appeared there in 1556, the first European settlement being formed in 1664.

1664—1758, Establishment of French commercial houses on the Senegal.

1758—1793, England annexes and occupies the Senegal Coast.

1763, The Senegal territory temporarily ceded, to England at the Peace of Paris; formally restored 20 years later.

1793 and following years, state of anarchy. Disputes about possession. Wars with the natives.

1817, France again definitely obtains the Senegal territory and remains henceforth in undisputed possession.

1854, Faidherbe's appearance on the Senegal. War with the Trarzas and Hadsch Omar. The first French advance to Futa Dschallon.

1860—1863, War with Càyor. Battle of Ngolgol, 30th Dec. 1863.

1872 and following years. Galleni's, Archinard's, Combes', and Monteil's campaigns against the Dominions of Samory.

1882, June 28th, Frontier treaty with England. 14th Sept. Protectorate over Bafing.

1882—1891, Fifteen Treaties for the cession of territories concluded with native princes.

1895, June 16th, Creation of the "Gouvernement général de l'Afrique occidentale".

Residence of the Governor-General, *St. Louis*, 20,000 inhabitants.

Varia.

## French Soudan.

*Le Soudan Français.*

Official title.

Frontiers.

Officially, this title comprises all the territories of the interior of West Africa which lie on the Upper Senegal and on the Upper and Middle Niger. Towards the *North*, the territory crosses into the great French Sphere of Interest of the West Sahara; in the *West* it borders on the Senegal Colony and the Guinée Française, Sierra Leone, Liberia, and the Colony of the Rivières du Sud. *The East frontier* is not exactly determined, but joins the boundary line of the French Sphere of Interest (from Say on the Niger to the Upper Volta and the mouth of the Assiniè). From 4° West Latitude of Greenwich, as far as the Western frontier of Sokoto, England, France, and Germany are each striving to augment their influence among the negroes, and protectorate or commercial treaties are being frequently concluded with native princes. Since the occupation of Timbuctoo by the French, the course of the Niger is no longer the *North frontier* of the French Soudan, which extends beyond the river into the Turag districts of the South Sahara. In this immense sphere of power a distinction is made officially between: 1. *occupied*; 2. *annexed*; and 3. *protected territories*. For the official frontier between the French Soudan and the Senegal Colony, see page 21.

Owing to the constant changes in area of the occupied territories, it is difficult to give any reliable figures. The annexed territories,

Area.  
Population.  
Divisions.

**Possession.** mostly situated on the Upper Senegal (Kaarta, Bachunu, the Country of the Uled Embarek, Bambuk, Fuladugu, Beledugu, Bambara, Bondu, Futa Toro, Futa Dshallon, Timbuctoo) are held to contain 54,000 square miles and 360,000 inhabitants; the protected territories (Massina, Segú, Samory's and Tieba's Country, Jatenga, Aribinda, Kong) 230,000 square miles and 3 million inhabitants (5 millions, including the Senegal Colony). Continual fighting takes place between the French troops and the natives, particularly with the Turaeg negroes in the North and the Madinka negroes in the South, whenever France attempts fresh occupation. The territories in dispute between France, Germany and England are in particular Gurma and Mossi (Muschi). *It is not yet determined how far the power of the Sultan of Sokoto extends in the West.* The petty princes declare it does not reach so far as this district; consequently the conditions of the *Anglo-French treaty of the 5th August 1890* are not applicable to this part of Africa. To determine the sphere of power of Sokoto is a problem which will require some time before it is practically and satisfactorily solved.

1796, July 20th, Mungo Park arrives on the Niger.

1827—1828, René Caillié's journey through the West Soudan and to Timbuctoo.

1865, First French military campaign to the Soudan.

1878 and following years, Gallieni's and Archinard's military expeditions to the Soudan.

1880, Gallieni's protectorate treaty with Ahmadu, which was not carried into effect.

1881, July 14th, Futa Dshallon under French rule.

1883—1885, Campaigns against Samory.

1887, March 23rd, Samory under French protection. — April 22nd Segú, Nioro, Kaarta ditto.

1889, Captain Binger's advance on Kong.

1890, Incorporation of the territory between Bassam and Liberia.

1894, Taking of Timbuctoo by the French.

1895, June, 16th, Creation of the "Gouvernement général de l'Afrique occidentale".

1896, Hourst navigates the Niger. — The French occupy Wagadugu, the Capital of Mossi.

The French Soudan is ruled by a military governor, who has his residence at *Kayes*, but who is subordinate to the governor-general of the Senegal Colony.

Varia.

## French Guinea and the Ivory Coast.

*Guinée Française; Rivières du Sud, Côte d'Ivoire.*

Official title.

French Guinea, which was separated from the Senegal Colony on the 1st January 1890, includes the districts on the Casamanza (Casamence 11°—9° North Latitude) together with the neighbouring Archipelago, with the exception of Los Islands, which are English; further, the coast territory from the mouth of the River Nuñez to the mouth of the Scarcies, together with the Interior, Futa Dshallon, bordering on the French Soudan, the frontiers of which are not yet determined. (*Treaty with England 28th June 1882*). For administrative purposes, the French Possessions on the *Ivory Coast* were included in this territory down to 1896, as also those on the *Gold Coast*, beginning on the coast at Cape Palmas at the mouth of the St. Pietro River, and extending as far as the mouth of the Assinië River (Grand Bassam, Grand Lahou, Jackville), including the Interior with undefined frontiers. (*Treaty with England 10th August 1894*.) This territory is called Rivières du Sud (formerly Bas de Côte).

Frontiers.  
Divisions.

The district on the Casamanza contains 15,000 sq. km.; (Guinée Française, 150,000 sq. km.), with 103,000 inhabitants (Guinée Française, 500,000 [200 Europeans]). The Rivières du Sud include about 25,000 square miles with a fluctuating population of about

Area.  
Population.

200,000. Of course, only the inhabited stretch of coast is here taken into account, as the area and population of the Interior bordering on the French Soudan (Kong and Beledugu) do not appear to be determined.

**Possession.**

The whole country on the Casamanza is the immediate possession of France. The governor of French Guinea also exercises authority over Futa Dshallon. Outside the coast territories of the Rivières du Sud, i. e., in the Interior the protectorate of France is constantly extending.

**History.  
Treaties.  
Frontier.  
Regulations.**

Since the middle of the 15th century, the Portuguese have traded towards the Casamanza, where the British have several times tried to obtain a firm footing, but without success.

1828, France occupies the Island Djogué at the mouth of the Casamanza.

1836—1837, The French occupy the islands Carabane and Guimbering at the mouths of the Casamanza and Cacheo, and found the station Sedhiu on the main-land.

1868, February 4th, Treaty with Beriby and Basha (ratified 20th December 1883).

1883, December 16th, A French resident appears at Assinië, although the French troops had been withdrawn from the garrison in 1870, since which time the coast was guarded by the employés of the firm Verdier et de la Rochelle. The French, however, always retained protectorate rights.

1884, Bouët Willaumez's treaty with the chiefs of the Ivory coast of Assinië, Grand Bassam, and Dabú.

1885, *December 24th, Convention between France, Portugal and Germany*, by which the territories of Kaba and Kabitai, which Germany had occupied between Compony and Mellacorée, were restored to France.

1886, May 12th, *Convention between Portugal and France* (ratified 31st August 1887) which fixed the present frontiers of the

territories on the Casamanza, and by which France ceded the territories of the Rio Cassini and Ziquincior to Portugal.

1889, August 10th, Frontier Regulation with England. Separation of the colony from the Senegal.

1891, France occupies the last unoccupied stretch of coast South of the Liberian frontier.

1893, March 10th, Organisation of the colonies: (1) La Guinée française; (2) Côte d'ivoire; (3) Dahomey.

1895, *January 21st, Convention between France and England* relating the frontier line. — 15th June. Constitution of the "Gouvernement général de l'Afrique occidentale".

1896, March 16th. Organisation of a judicial autonomy for French Guinea.

The governor of "Guinée française" has his residence at *Conakry* on Tombo Island; the governor of the Ivory Coast at *Grand Bassam*.

Varia.

---

## Portuguese Guinea or Portuguese Senegambia.

*Guinea Portuguesa, Senegambia Portuguesa.*

Official title.

This embraces the territory between the basin of the Casamanza and that of the Cassini. *The North frontier* forms the watershed between the Casamanza and the Cacheo, *the South frontier* a line from the Channel between Catak Island, at the mouth of the Cassini, and the mainland, and from Tristão, at the mouth of the Compony, running thence to the middle of the course of the Cassini, and finally crossing this river as well as the Rio Grande, to the west of the junction of the Combia. The two frontier lines meet at the Geba Springs (*Treaty with France 12th May 1886*).

Frontiers.  
Divisions.

The district also embraces the Bissagos Archipelago, 30 islands, the largest of which is Orango.

- Area.** The superficial area is from 37,000, to 42,000 sq. km.; but only about 72 sq. km. are occupied. Scattered settlements cover a surface of 10,000 sq. km.
- Population.** The population is estimated on the undetermined colonised area. The figures therefore differ, varying as they do between 150,000 and 800,000 (the latter from English sources, 1885).
- Possession.** In theory, direct possession; in reality not to be distinguished from a protectorate.
- History.** Portugal settled here in the middle of the 15th century.
- Treaties.** 1692. André Bruë landed 275 British colonists here; the greater number succumbed to the climate, whereupon England withdrew all claim to possession.
- Frontier.** 1870. Decision of the President of the U. S. A., as arbiter, in favour of Portugal.
- Regulations.** 1885. May 15th. Regulation of the present Northern frontier on the basis of a *Treaty with France*, which however was not ratified until *August 1887*.
- Varia.** Residence of the governor, *Bolâma* (Bulam).

---

## British Possessions in West-Africa.

- Official title.** *West-African Colonies* (formerly *West-African Settlements*).
- Divisions.** The British possession in West-Africa consists of 4 crown colonies: Gambia, Sierra Leone, Gold Coast, and Lagos.

*(a) Gambia.*

The Gambia Colony embraces the territory at the mouth of the Gambia River., viz., the island Santa Maria, 13° 28' North Latitude, with Combo and Punta Barra on the right bank of the river, and the Bank d'Albreda, San Giacamo, Elephant and Mac Carthy Islands with the corresponding river banks. The present frontiers were agreed upon between the French and British Governments by the *Treaty of the 10th August* (2nd and 19th Nov.) 1889. Accordingly, Georgetown on the Gambia forms the most easterly point of the British territory. The superficial area amounts to about 7000 sq. km. (2700 square miles), the inhabitants to 50,000. The so-called "settlement proper" contains only 69 square miles with 14,978 inhabitants (1894); the remainder is a Sphere of Interest. Since 1821 the British have been in undisputed possession of the colony. Previously however, the Portuguese, French, Dutch and Spanish were in possession. Gambia was separated from Sierra Leone for administrative purposes on the 1st December 1888.

Capital: *St. Mary of Bathurst*, 6000 inhabitants.

*(b) Sierra Leone.*

This colony extends 180 English miles along the coast from the Scaries River in the North to the Liberian frontier in the South, embraces the island Sherbro and Cape Mount, has about 39,000 sq. km. or 15,000 square miles and 180,000 inhabitants, including about 300 whites. *The North frontier* was defined in detail by a *Treaty between France and England of the 28th June, 1882* (adopted by the French Chamber 1894) and the *Southern frontier* on the basis of *one between England and Liberia of the 11th January, 1887*. By a *Treaty of 21st January, 1895*, only the Northern frontier alone was revised by an Anglo-French Frontier Regulation Commission; but the details of it have not yet been recognised by the powers. The cause of

this revision was a still valid treaty with France, giving the latter the right to annex territories on the Upper Niger.

The territory was first visited by the Carthaginians. They were followed by French mariners from Dieppe in the 15th century, who settled here, after which the Portuguese took possession. In 1787 it was ceded to England by native chiefs. In 1800 to 1808, a British trading company occupied the territory, and eight years later transferred their rights to the British Government. 1861, the Island Sherbro was sold to England by the native chiefs; 1883, considerably extended. Sierra Leone contains 4000 square miles and (1891) 74,835 inhabitants, including 224 whites. Separated from Gambia for administrative purposes on 1st December 1888.

Capital: *Freetown*, 30,033 inhabitants.

(c) *Gold Coast.*

The British Colonies on the Gold Coast, Appolonia, Vassao, Krikor, Denkera, Sefui, Akim, Croboe, Crepi, Akwama, Cape Coast Castle, Elmina, Axim, Accra, Adda, Winnebac, Quitta, Dixcove, Secomdi, Anamaboe, embrace 350 miles of coast on the Gulf of Guinea between 5° West and 2° East Longitude from Greenwich together with the Interior, the limits of which have not yet been determined. *An agreement was come to with France* concerning the course of the Western frontier as far as 10° North Latitude in July 1893, and *with Germany and England on the 1st July 1890* with reference to the Eastern frontier, which from the 7° North Latitude and beyond is not yet determined. The Northern frontier in no way defines the limits of the Soudanese districts of Mossi and Gurma, as the upper course of the Volta is not yet exactly known, while Great Britain is engaged in extending her sphere of interest by the conclusion of protectorate and commercial treaties. In 1896 the King of Ashanti placed himself under British protection.

The area of the territory claimed by Great Britain is given as 120,000 sq. km., the population (1891) 1,473,882 (150 whites). 15,000 square miles form direct possession, the frontiers of this territory being constantly extended. 46,600 square miles (1895) belong to the protectorate.

It is alleged that mariners from Dieppe landed on the Gold Coast as early as 1365. 1610, the Portuguese took possession and inhabited the territory. 1616, the Dutch ceded to England, by the treaty of Breda, the land which had been gradually gained, and two private trading companies undertook the opening up of this rich district, in order to surrender it in 1821 to the British government, which for administrative purposes incorporated it to Sierra Leone. 1824, commencement of the war with the barbarian state of the Ashantis, in which the Fantis were England's allies. 1837, Dutch Embassy sent to the Court of Ashanti. 1850, England buys the fortresses of Accra and Quitta from Denmark for 250,000 francs. 1867 and 1871, Holland sells the remainder of its possessions on the Gold Coast (tracts on the Sweet River) to England. 1873, England's war with Ashanti; battles of Essaman, Iskobio, Amaoful, Becquah, Ordashu and Coomassi. 1874, February 4th, Taking and burning of Coomassi. 1895—1896, Third military expedition against Ashanti and submission of king Prempeh, who places himself under English protection. Since 15th of Jan., 1886, independent government.

Capital: *Accra*, 16,267 inhabitants.

(d) *Lagos*.

The island and town of Lagos on the Slave Coast from Badagry to Lekke are the actual possession of England. The British Protectorate extends between the 2° and 6° East Longitude of Greenwich (*Treaty with France, 20th Aug. 1889*) "for some distance inland", a definition which distinctly shows the undetermined nature of the frontiers. In consequence of the war against Yoruba (with Abeokutta,

Jbadan and Ogbomotsho) in 1893—1894, and the Jebu, the British protectorate was also extended over this thickly-populated dominion. The British also claim Borgu for the protectorate.

*According to surveys*, the island and the protectorate contain 1071 square miles or 2770 sq. km.; with 100,000 inhabitants. Yoruba included, the British territory embraces 20,070 square miles or 51,800 sq. km. and 3 million inhabitants (150 whites).

Lagos was an ancient slave market. 1852, England concluded a treaty with King Dotschemo, resulting in the abolition of the slave trade, and the establishment of the British Protectorate.

1862, March 3rd, Annexation of Lagos, and connection of the colonies for administrative purposes with Sierra Leone.

1874, July 24th, Lagos placed under the Governor of the Gold Coast.

1883, Extension of the Colony.

1886, January 15th, Independent government.

1892—1895, Campaigns against the Egba and Jebu.

Capital: *Lagos* (the African Liverpool) 60,000 inhabitants.

---

## Liberia.

**Official title.** *United States of Liberia.*

**Frontiers.** The territory of the Republic extends along the Atlantic coast from Cape Mount, near Robert's-Port, to the mouth of the St. Pietro (630 km.). The frontier towards Sierra Leone was separately defined in a *Treaty with England 24th Dec. 1885 and 11th Nov. 1887*; and that bordering on French territory in a *Treaty with France, 8 Dec. 1892 and August 1894*. It stretches into the Mandinka

Countries almost as far as Musardu, and is therefore, on the average more than 300 km. distant from the sea.

The superficial area amounts to 85,350 sq. km. or 14,360 square miles.

Population, 1,068,000; (according to earlier estimates, 760,000 to 2 millions), of which 18,000 are Americo-Liberians.

The territory comprises four states viz: Mesurado, Grand Bassa, Sinu and Maryland. A Sphere of Interest or Protectorate does not exist.

1815, Arrival in Sierra Leone of the first emancipated negroes from Massachusetts.

1820, Founding of the *American Colonisation Society* for the settlement of emancipated negroes from America, which formed the first colony in Liberia.

1822, The whole colony declares itself an independent and free republic. Government formed in 1847.

1857, Union of the Maryland territory with the Republic. This territory was founded by *The Maryland Colonisation Society* in 1834. Lately, the American negroes have flocked back to Africa in large numbers, for the purpose of the repatriation of the negro race, a movement which is being zealously advocated in the U. S. A.

Capital, *Monrovia* (5000 Inhabitants in 1891): the seat of the Government, which is based on that of the U. S. A.

Area.

Population.

Divisions.  
Possession.

History.

Varia.

## Togoland.

*Protectorate of the German Empire* (Schutzgebiete des Deutschen Reiches): *Togoland*. Official title.

This part of the Slave Coast is bounded on the *West* ( $1^{\circ} 14'$  Longitude East of Greenwich) by the British Gold Coast Colony, on the *East* ( $1^{\circ} 41'$  Longitude East of Greenwich) by French Dahomey. In the North and North West, the frontiers are not yet defined, but the North-West frontier is held to extend from Lome

Frontiers.

to the Todshié and Volta, the course of which it follows. Germany's intention is to advance as far as the Niger. Length of coast, 52 km.

- Area.** About 76,000 sq. km., 19,660 square miles, according to English estimates. As far as the 9° North Latitude, only 60,000 sq. km.
- Population.** About 2 Millions. Only 800,000, according to English figures. 89 Europeans, of which 81 (1897) are Germans.
- Divisions.** Togo proper, North of the Avon Lagoon, forms the heart of the land inhabited by the Ewe tribes; to this must be added Little Popo, ceded by France to Germany with the Interior (Adeli districts), in December 1885. The most important stations in the Interior are Bismarckburg and Misahöhe.
- Possession.** Actual possession on the coast: Protectorate in the Interior.
- History.** Discovered in the 16th century. — 1682, the Great Elector established colonies at Anehó (Gross Friedrichsburg), which however were broken up in 1718, having proved a commercial failure.
- 1720, The Dutch took the fortress Gross Friedrichsburg.
- 1884, July 15th, The country on the coast placed under German protection by the German Consul-General, Dr. Gustav Nachtigal, by desire of certain commercial houses in Bremen and Hamburg. Protectorate treaty with the King of Togo.
- 1885, *Dec. 24th*. France cedes Little Popo to Germany in accordance with *Treaty*.
- 1888, Treaty of neutrality relating Salaga. Germany's priority recognised.
- 1894, Fergusson tries to acquire Salaga for England.
- 1894—1895. Expeditions, Gruner, Döring, Carnap. Treaties with Goorma, Mangol, Dagomba, Tshantyoan, Gando.
- 1896, September 1st, The French occupy Wagadugu.
- 1897, May 24th — July 26th, Conference between France and Germany relating to the hinterland of Togo.
- Treaties.** The East (Treaty of 1888, unpublished) and the North frontiers
- Frontier.** were regulated by the *Anglo-German Treaty of Oct. 29th (1st Nov.)*
- Regulations.** 1886, and the West frontier by the *Franco-German treaty of the*
- Varia.**

1st July, 1890. (Lome, Todshie River — Volta River). The territory is under the control of an Imperial Governor-General. Seat of government, *Sebbe*; since 1897 *Lome* (2084 inhabitants, 31 Europeans).

## Dahomey.

*Dahomey — Pays de protectorat de Dahomey et dépendances.* Official title.

According to the *Anglo-French treaty of the 10th August 1889*, German Togoland ( $1^{\circ} 41'$  Longitude East of Greenwich) forms the *West frontier*, and Jorubaland (course of the Addo) the *East frontier*. The *North frontier* is by no means defined. It lies probably between  $6^{\circ} 14' 15''$  and  $6^{\circ} 23' 51''$  N. Lat. Frontiers.

The *superficial area* cannot be given in exact figures. According to English estimates there are about 4000 square miles. The French calculation gives (1897): 40,000 sq. km. without new territorial acquirements. Area.

The population, according to English authorities, is 730,000, viz., Dahomey 150,000, Grand Popo 100,000, Mahis and Ajada 150,000, Porto Novo 150,000, Abeokutta 120,000, Ogbomotsho 60,000. About 1 Million, however, would be nearer the mark. According to the French: "300,000 habitants pacifiés aujourd'hui (1897)." Population.

The French colonies on the Gold Coast, called Benin, consisted of *Grand Popo*, *Agué*, and *Porto Novo* (Agiuda, also Ajuda or Glehué), also called after the capital, *Whydah* or Weyda (Uida). Since the 15th Jan. 1894, two French vassal kingdoms took the place of the old barbarian dominion of Dahomey, viz., *Abomé* in the North and *Allada* in the South. Each had its own king, who was virtually a vassal of France. Their successors must receive the Divisions. Possession.

sanction of the French, who have abolished the former human sacrifices. A French resident minister lives in Abomé. France has introduced free trade, and has the right to build railways and telegraphs in both kingdoms and to establish schools.

History.  
Treaties.  
Frontier.  
Regulations.

*Grand Popo and Agué* were from the earliest times the coast asylum for the refugees from Dahomey. 1871, Expulsion of the Europeans.

1883, French Protectorate over Grand and Little Popo; April, 1885, over Agué.

1885, Little Popo ceded to Germany.

*Porto Novo* became a state in the 18th century at the time of the founding of the town, Hombonu (Agiashé or Little Adra) under King Allada or Adra.

1861, Bombardment of Porto Novo by the English, whereupon the king seeks French protection. France occupies the capital, but evacuates it soon afterwards.

1882, France reclaims the old Protectorate rights and again occupies Porto Novo and Kotonu.

*Dahomey* became a state in the first half of the 17th century (Capital, Savi or Xavier in Agiuda), destroyed the rival and neighbouring state, Allada, in 1724. Portugal has a resident-consul in Whyda.

1876, English campaign against Dahomey.

1883, July 19th, French Protectorate over Porto Seguro, Agué, Grand Popo. July 25th, Protection treaty with Porto Novo.

1885, June 10th, Watshi (North of Agué) under French protection. — December 24th, Treaty re the West frontier. — August 5th, Protectorate treaty with Dahomey, which, however, is not recognised by Portugal.

1887, Dec. 22th, Portugal renounces the Protectorate taken over on the 5th of August 1885, and merely retains certain commercial rights.

1889, August 10th, Decision concerning regulation of the Eastern frontier (Lagos); October 3rd, Treaty relative to Porto Novo and Kotonu, the latter being occupied by France.

1890, French campaign against Dahomey.

1894, French campaign and conquest of Dahomey. January 25th, Subjection of King Behanzin.

1895, Organisation of the colony: Divided into two States, dependent upon France.

1896. September 1st, France occupies Wagadugu.

1897. July 26th, Arrangement between France and Germany relating to Goorma and Sansane-Mangu.

Seat of the French resident, *Abomé* and *Porto Novo* (Cotonou) residence of one of the kings, *Kelmina* (Kana).

Varia.

---

## Niger Coast Protectorate.

*Niger Coast Protectorate.*

Official title.

This territory is not to be confounded with the *British Niger territories*. (See p. 38.) It includes the whole coast line between Lagos and Cameroon, with the exception of the tract between Forcados and the Brass Rivers, which belongs to the Niger territories, besides the possessions of the African Association founded in 1889 in the Oil River district.

The frontier begins (1896) on the seacoast, 10 miles North West of the Benin River, extends along this river as far as Lagos Creek, and then follows and includes the general frontier of the Benin territories, following the Forcados River to Gana, extending 10 miles towards the North East, and 50 towards the North. The Eastern frontier begins between Nun and Brass at the mouth of the Niger begins towards the East, and extends towards Idu to the Oratsghi or Aegenni River. According to the statement of the Imperial Commissioner and Consul General, "these boundaries are

Frontiers.

subject to modification according to local requirements." The frontier-line towards Cameroon extends from the commencement of the Rio del Rey estuary to the rapids of the River Cross (9° 1' North Latitude), and thence "to a point East of Yola on the Benuè River." Its details are therefore uncertain.

**Area.** At present nothing definite can be said concerning the area  
**Population.** and population.

**Divisions.** The coast of the territory was discovered by the Portuguese at  
**Possession.** the end of the 15th century, but for three centuries it was only sparsely colonised.

**History.** 1854. Baikie's expedition up the Niger. The origin of the first  
**Varia.** British settlement on the Niger River.

1884, July, Declaration of the British Protectorate by Consul Hewett, after he had concluded treaties with the chiefs in consequence of Germany's acquisition of the Cameroon district.

1886, July, Issue of the Niger Company's charter.

1891, Transference of government to the Imperial Commissioner and Consul-General, with administrative and judicial power. Six vice-consuls, under the Consul-General, are stationed along the rivers. The Consul-General has no fixed residence.

---

## Niger Territories.

**Official title.** *Niger Territories.*

**Frontiers.** Not to be confounded with the Niger Coast Protectorate (see p. 36). The English territory of the so-called *Royal Niger Company* — founded in 1879 as the United African Company, re-named the National African Company, 1882 — lies to the North of

the Niger Coast Protectorate. By the terms of the *Anglo-French Agreement of the 5th of August 1890*, the frontier between the English and French Spheres of Interest in the Niger Territory is a straight line from the town Say on the Niger to Barua (Baruwa) on the Tsad Lake, "drawn in such a manner as to comprise within the" "sphere of the Niger Company all that which fairly belongs to the" "kingdom of Sokoto, the line to be determined by commissioners to" "be appointed." By the terms of the *Anglo-German Agreement of the 2nd August 1886*, the East frontier of the territory extends from a point on the River Cross about  $9^{\circ} 8'$  East Latitude of Greenwich, and appears to be marked on the British Admiralty Chart as "Rapids," to the point on the Benuë "three miles below the centre of the main mouth of the River Faro," about 30 miles East of Yola, and from this point to the shore of the Tsad Lake,  $0^{\circ} 35'$  East of the Meridian of Kuka, the capital of Bornu. (*Anglo-German treaty, Nov. 15th 1893.*)

The whole territory of the British Protectorate is estimated at 500,000 square miles.

Area.

The population amounts to 20—35 millions.

Population.

The greater part embraces the dominion of the *Fulân or Fellâtah of Sokoto*, whose vassal is the Sultan of Gando, the greatest of the Fellâtah chiefs. How far the territory of the "Emperor of Sokoto", as he is called by the English, extends, and which of the chiefs towards the West recognise his authority, is very uncertain. The Sokoto territories are usually said to contain 219,500 square miles and 15 millions inhabitants. The reigning Sultan of Sokoto transferred the rights of civil, criminal, and fiscal jurisdiction over foreigners to the Royal Niger Company. Among the chiefs of the provinces belonging to Sokoto, there is a sort of Lieutenant-Governor of the Sultan of Sokoto. These officials attend to the payment of the tribute, and are in regular communication with the

Divisions.  
Possession.

"Emperor". The officials of the Royal Niger Company have concluded a series of special treaties ("alternative treaties") with the chiefs or "vassal kings" of the various provinces. To the Niger territories in the West on the right bank of the Niger belongs, besides Sokoto, *Borgu or Bussang*, which borders upon Dahomey in the North and *Adamua* in the South East. The Capital of Sokoto is at present *Wurno* (15,000 inhabitants).

History.  
Treaties.  
Frontier.  
Regulation.

The earliest relations of England with the tract embracing the present Niger territories date from 1822 and the following years, Lieutenant Clapperton reaching Sokoto in 1825 and remaining there till 1827.

1884—1885. J. Thomson's treaties with the Sultans of Sókoto and Gando.

1885, May 7th. The South East frontier regulation with Germany.

1886, July 10th. *Granting of the Royal Charter* to the National Africa Company Limited, founded in 1882, and which henceforth called the *Royal Niger Company Chartered and Limited*, capital 1 million *l.* 18th October 1887. Extension of these rights. From 1883—1886, the Company *concluded about 300 treaties* with the potentates of the Niger territories in Sokoto and Gando, from which they derive their present rights of possession.

1880. A French commercial company tried to compete with the British on the Niger, but received so little support from France that they were compelled to abandon their project, the British company having already in 1884 a Niger flotilla of 25 steamers and a considerable capital. Since then Great Britain has endeavoured to firmly establish herself on the middle Niger and in the Benuë districts, despite the simultaneous attempts of France and Germany in this direction on the ground that the territory "Sokoto" is indeterminate. In accordance with the terms of the *Berlin Treaty of the 26th of February 1885*, the navigation on the Niger is free.

1896, January 15th. Franco-English Convention.

Capital: *Asaba*. The military head quarters is at Lokodja Varia.  
(Lokoja). Government by a "Civil Council" in *London*.

## The Independent States of Central- Soudan. Tshad Lake Countries.

There is no general official title.

In England, the Tsad Lake State, *Bornu*, is looked upon as the principal of the Independent States of the Central-Soudan; then come *Wadai*, *Kanem and Baghirmi*, all bordering on the Tshad Lake. The political frontiers of these States are undefinable.

As regards *Bornu*, this state belongs, in accordance with the *Agreement of the 5th August, 1890, and the Anglo-German treaty of the 15th November, 1893*, to the British Sphere of Interest. The state contains has about 50,000 square miles area and about 5 million inhabitants. The Soudan conqueror, Rabah, an officer of Ziber Pasha from the Egyptian Soudan, governs the land as Mai or Sultan. Capital: Kuka (Kukaua), 50,000 to 60,000 inhabitants. By the terms of the *Anglo-French Agreement of 1893*, Bornu is, according to the English official statements, excluded from the sphere of France and Germany.

*Wadai* is at present the most powerful state on the Tshad Lake. Even the celebrated conqueror Rabah could not subjugate it. The area amounts to 172,000 square miles with about 2 million inhabitants. *Kanem* on the North-East side of Tshad (30,000 square miles, 10,000 inhabitants, capital, *Mao*, where the authorised agent of

Wadai resides), is tributary to Wadai, as is also *Baghirmi*, which was recently reconquered, after Rabah had deemed it expedient to retire towards Bornu, and leave the occupied country.

The country has a superficial area of about 20,000 square miles and 71,000 inhabitants; and borders on the Tshad Lake, the German possession of Cameroon, the French colony of Haut Ubangi, and in the East on Wadai. The suzerainty of Wadai was recognised by the Sultan of the country (then residing at Massenja) as early as 1871.

As far as the right of possession is concerned, the Tshad Lake territory is a district of Africa over which there has been much dispute, and the order maintained there at present is not likely to last long. In course of time two points with reference to possessory rights came to the front: 1. Germany endeavoured to touch the Tshad Lake shore from Cameroon across the Bennuë, and attained her object by *an Agreement with England in 1890 and 1893* and with *France in 1894*. 2. France attained, over the basin of the Tshad Lake, as it is technically expressed in France, "la réunion sur les rives du lac Tshad des possessions Françaises du Soudan, de l'Algerie et du Congo Français," which even in France itself was considered as utopian as late as 1890. The *Convention between the English Niger Company and Germany of 15th November 1893*, secured the East of the Tshad Lake territory as far as Dâr Fûr to the latter, which security has naturally a theoretical value only. In consequence of the *Franco-German Convention of the 4th February and 15th March, 1894*, Germany was granted an advantage not less theoretical in being allowed access from Cameroon to the shores of the Tshad Lake. In the same convention of the 4th February, 1894, France also succeeded in reaching the Tshad Lake; Germany, however, also reached the Sanga Valley and consequently the Congo. To all appearances, France has gained the greatest advantage, having not only right of access to the Tshad Lake along the Shari, but also to Mayo Kebbi

and thereby "par Benouë", as it is called, to the Niger, on which navigation is free. It is however doubtful whether Turkey will be able to reach the Tshad Lake across the Eastern Sahara. Doubtless England will in future reach the Tshad Lake either across the dominion of the Mahdi along the Nile, or from the East African side (Ibea, which see) and thus endeavour to connect her West African with her East African possessions and the Nile Countries across the Tshad Lake.

## Cameroon.

*Protectorate of the German Empire* (Schutzgebiete des deutschen Reiches): *Kamerun*. Official title.

The *Western frontier* runs (see p. 39, Niger Territories) in accordance with the *Convention with England of the 14th April, 1893*, from the right bank of the Calabar River ( $9^{\circ} 8'$  East Longitude of Greenwich, "Ethiopian Rapids") towards the North East in a straight line direct to Yola in Adamawa (30 miles East of this town lies the boundary point, at present in British possession). Thence it runs to a point situated on the left shore of the Benuë, which lies 5 km below the principal mouth of the River Frao, afterwards taking a straight course to Ngala on the South border of Tshad Lake. The coast line is 198.1 km, in length, and extends from the Campo River or Etembue,  $2^{\circ} 14'$  North Latitude, to Rio del Rey,  $4^{\circ}$  North Latitude. The *Southern frontier* extends in a straight line from the mouth of the Campo River to the  $15^{\circ}$  East Longitude of Greenwich (*Agreement between France and Germany, 24th December, 1885*). The *Eastern frontier* follows roughly speaking the  $15^{\circ}$  Longitude East of Greenwich (along the Logone to the Point Lamé and thence to Biafara on the Mayo Kebu [Benuë]), to the shore of the Tshad Lake. *The Franco-German convention of the 15th of March (4th of February) 1894* regu-

Frontiers.

lates this frontier in detail, and allows Germany to share the upper course of the Sanga River, and consequently to have access to the Congo Basin. It is further due to this Convention that the Northern frontier partly follows the course of the Shari. Germany has thus an interest in the Shari (Logone) basin. *Special treaties with England, April 29th and May 7th, 1885; July 27th and August 2nd, 1886.*

- Area.** The area amounts to 495,000 sq. km. or about 200,000 square miles, according to British estimates.
- Population.** Population: 2,500,000. 1897 about 236 Europeans, of which 161 are Germans and 36 English; according to English estimates, about 4,570,000 inhabitants.
- Divisions.** The provinces belonging to this Protectorate are chiefly Cameroon  
**Possession.** itself (from camarão, said to be the name of a small kind of crab), Batanga with the Kribi Station and Lolodorf, Tibati's dominion and the greater part of Adamawa, together with the districts of the Mendif mountain on the South shore of the Tshad Lake. (The official title-deed says "Schutzgebiet" (Protectorate).
- History.** Discovered by the Portuguese in the 15th Century. The coast of  
**Treaties.** Cameroon remained uninhabited for a long time. Later, British missionaries settled there, and were followed by traders from most of the sea-faring nations. Manifold disputes ensued among Hamburg firms, French in Batanga and English as to possession.
- 1861, Richard Burton's and Gustav Mann's journeys in Cameroon.
- 1871 and following years. Buchholz, Reichenow and Luehder in Cameroon and Calabar territories.
- 1877, Ross, Grenfell and T. J. Comber's explorations in Cameroon.
- 1884, Rear-Admiral Knorr lands with 185 soldiers, captures Fetishtown and Hickorytown and subjugates the chief, Bell. — July 14th, Dr. Gustav Nachtigal placed the possessions of the Hamburg firms under German protection.

1885, January, German flag hoisted in Batanga. — May 7th, Treaty with England about the Northern frontier and again August 2nd, 1886, and July 1st, 1890.

1887, March 29, Ambas Bay and Victoria handed over to Germany.

1885 — 1896, The journeys of the explorers, R. Flegel, Kund, Tappenbeck, Kling, v. Stetten, Dr. Zintgraff, Lieutenant Morgen Baron von Uechtritz, Dr. Passarge and others led to an extension of the possessions in the Interior.

The protectorate is ruled by an Imperial Governor, who also governs Togoland administratively and judicially, and has his residence at *Cameroon*. Missionary station: *Victoria*.

Varia.

---

## Spanish Possession in the Gulf of Guinea and on the Gaboon.

In the Gulf of Guinea, Spain possesses the Islands, *Fernándo Po*, 1998 sq. km., 25,000 inhabitants, 13 to the sq. km., and *Annobón* ("Good Year", 17 sq. km., 3000 inhabitants, 176 to the sq. km.) of which the former was discovered by the Portuguese in 1471, and the latter on New Year's Day 1498 by Juan de Santaren. Both islands were ceded to Spain in 1778.

Since the 1st of March 1843, Spain has laid claim to the so-called *Corisco Bay* with the islands, *Corisco* and *Eloby*, at the mouth of the Muni and Campo, and a small part of the adjoining territory, *San Juan*. *Corisco* island has an area of 14 sq. km.; the whole of the territory claimed by Spain, 2200 sq. km. (according to English estimate, 150 square miles), with 30,000 inhabitants. The Spaniards claim the right to trade with this territory.

France is the only country which recognises the Spanish claim to the whole territory. Spain however lays exclusive claim to a part of the territory not recognised by France, from the Cape Santa Clara to the Interior, of about 50,000 sq. km. (British estimates, 69,000 square miles) with a population of 500,000, which was acquired by *the treaties* with the chiefs, *October 1884*. Indeed, at one time, Spain was believed to lay claim to 150,000 sq. km. in this part of Africa. The point remains unsolved. — The territory is administratively connected with Fernáudo Pó.

## Portuguese Possession in the Gulf of Guinea.

Since the glorious times of Portuguese discovery in the 15th century, Portugal has possessed *St. Thomas Island* in the Gulf of Guinea (*Ilha de Sao Thomé*, 929 sq. km., 18,000 inhabitants [1895, presumably 20,000], or 20 to the sq. km.) and the *Princes Island* (*Ilha do Principe*, 151 sq. km., 3000 inhabitants, 19 to the sq. km.). According to British estimates a total surface of only 454 square miles and 21,040 inhabitants. This estimate however, dating from the years 1878—1879, is too low.

## French Congo.

Official title.

*Congo Français* (France Equatoriale, first part), and *Haut Ubangui* (second part).

Frontiers.  
Divisions.

The French possession on the coast of Lower Guinea, bordering in the south on the German protectorate (*Convention 24th December 1885*) embraces the districts on the Gaboon, Ogowe, Kuilu or Niari, and

extends along the coast (Loango Coast) to the Massabi (5° South Latitude) on the frontier of Portuguese Cabinda. The frontiers are defined in detail by the *Convention between France and Portugal on the 12th May 1886 and 25th May 1891*. The frontier, according to the Convention between France and the Association Internationale Africaine (*Berlin Conference 26th February 1885*) runs from the Easterly point of the Cabinda territory on the Upper Tshiloango, 10° 20' East of Paris, and follows this river until opposite Manyanga on the Congo. It then follows the right bank of the Congo as far as the junction of the Ubangui (*Convention between France and the Independent Congo States 29th April, 1887*), continuing its course to the mouth of the Mbomu, and along the right bank into the Niam Niam countries, between the seats of Semio and Ndoruma. The eastern frontier passes through the territory of the Bongo and Dâr Fertit (*Agreement between England and Germany, November, 1893*), as far as Dâr Fur. The northern frontier of the French possession is, with the exception of the tract on the Tshad Lake (see page 40), not determined upon. The neighbouring state is Wadai with its vassal lands of Baghirmi. As regards the Western frontier towards Cameroon, see page 42. The Kuilu, Alina, Likuala and Sanga Valleys join the basins of the Gaboon and Ogowe rivers, which with the aforesaid countries along the coast form the territory of the first colony (Congo Français). The territory of the second colony (Haut Ubangui) includes the countries extending along the right banks of the Ubangui and its tributaries upon the right bank and chiefly the basin of the Shari (1 Logone) and the Niam Niam countries on the right bank of the Mbomu.

The area measures 650,000 sq. km. (1891, officially 570,000 sq. km.); according to British calculation 300,000 square miles, of which about half belongs to each colony.

Area.

The number of inhabitants is 5,900,000 (officially 1891, about 5 millions; 1897, 10 millions). There are only about 300 Europeans beside the garrison.

Population.

**Possession.** In such an extensive province, only the stations on or near the coast can be considered as actual possession; the remainder comes under the titles Protectorate and Sphere of Interest.

**History.** The Loango and Gaboon coasts were discovered by the Portuguese in the 15th century who exported the natives as slaves. 1521, the first mission established there.

1839, February 9th, Bonët Villaumez obtained the Gaboon territory by treaty with the chiefs.

1841, Appearance of English and French ships to suppress the slave trade.

1849, Founding of the commercial station Libreville, the capital of the territory.

1850—1865, Paul Belloni du Chaillu's expedition.

1862, France acquired the Ogowe territory.

1873, German Loango expedition under Dr. Paul Güssfeldt.

1877, Stanley's navigation of the Congo.

1880, Pierre Savorgnan de Brazza commences operations on the Ogowe. Treaties with chiefs September 10th, October 30th 1880 — ratified November 30th 1882 — March 12th 1883, June 21st 1883, December 15th 1883, August 25th 1884.

1885, February 26th, Berlin Conference. *December 24th, Agreement with Germany relative to the Northern frontiers.*

1886, April 27th and June 22nd, decree, by means of which the colonies Gaboon and Congo became organised.

1891, April 30th, official title, "Congo Français".

1894, The French Congo divided into two separate colonies by a decree of the President of the French Republic dated July 13th.

In the general records of the *Berlin Conference, 26th February 1885*, Article I, 1—8 "General" and "Free Trade District in the Congo"; Article III, 10 and 12, "The Neutrality"; Article IV, 13—25, relate to the navigation of the Congo.

1884, *April 23rd, French Convention with King Leopold II*, according to which France received the right of preemption — le droit de préemption — over the territories of the Congo States.

1885, December 24th, *Convention between Germany and France re the Northern and North-Western frontiers.*

1886, May 12th, *Convention between France and Portugal re frontier regulation North of the Congo and South of the Senegal (Articles 3 and 4 re the Congo).*

1887, April 29th, *Treaty with the Congo State about Ubangui.*

1894, March 15th, *Convention with Germany re North-East frontier.*

Both colonies are governed by a „*commissaire du gouvernement* Government. *de la Republique Française*“, who in the Congo has his residence in *Libreville* (200 Europeans); in Haut Ubangui at various places.

By means of the Tsad Lake, the French possession, Sphere of Interest and Protectorate on the banks of the Congo and Ubangui are connected with the similar possessions in the West Soudan, on the Senegal, in the West Sahara, Algiers, and Tunis. Thus the „*réunion*“ (page 41) which French politicians and patriots have so earnestly strived for has become „*un fait accompli*“.

Varia.

## The Congo State.

*L'État Indépendant du Congo.*

Official title.

The *Western frontier* is formed by the Atlantic where the Congo discharges itself into the ocean. The *North frontier* leaves the ocean South of Povo grande near the Juba Factory, and runs according to the *convention between Portugal and the Congo State* of February and

Frontiers.

March (25th May) 1891 in the direction of Tshiloango, touches the Congo follows the course of this river and of the Ubangui, and, thirdly the left bank of the Mbomu as far as the point where the latter intersects the 5° North Latitude, in accordance with an agreement with France, dated August, 14th, 1894. It passes thence South to the 30° East of Greenwich, finally reaching the Latitude of the Nile Station Lâdo, after which it bends eastwards towards Lado itself, and pursues its course along the White Nile to the Albert Nyanza. The Congo State thus encloses the left of Emin Pasha's former province, which by the *agreement with England and France 12th May and 14th August, 1894*, is practically leased to Leopold II during his lifetime ("cedée à bail"). These two treaties deserve attention. The former was concluded with England only. By it, the territory as far as the Westerly watershed of the Nile is leased to the Congo State. France opposed this treaty, and compelled the Congo State to keep to the convention of the 14th August, by which this English Sphere of except the part of Emin's province, is not recognised by France. The treaty with England, 12th May, 1894, still remained in force; but in consequence of the French Convention of the 14th of August, 1894, it was not acted upon. Owing to these circumstances, the frontier in this part is not fixed. The frontier returns from the West shore of the Albert Lake to the 30° Longitude East of Greenwich and, following the same, turns at the North end of the Tanganyika Lake, running along its western shore (*declaration of the general administrator of the Congo State, February 1885*) and thence along the centre of the Meru Lake from the northernmost point of the basin, thus cutting the Meru in two. It next follows the Luapula, which discharges itself into the lake, as far as its outlet in the Bangweolo Lake. After following the watershed a short distance to the 30° East Longitude of Greenwich, the frontier bends round towards the West in a winding line towards the watershed of the Congo, thereby enclosing the province Katanga. *The South frontier* runs from the Bangweolo to the Dilolo Lake, turns

then (*Convention of Congo State with Portugal 30th Dec. 1886 and 25th May 1891*) towards the North to the Kassai; thence along the 7° South Latitude to Kuilu, along the 8° South Latitude to the Kuango, and finally parallel to Nokki to the sea-coast. (*Conventions of Congo State with Portugal, 14th February, 1885 and 24th March 1894.*) The frontier is settled and unbroken, i. e., apart from the circumstance that some of the land is leased for the lifetime of King Leopold II.

The superficial area is 2,252,700 sq. km.; about 900,000 square miles, British authorities.

Area.

The population is estimated at 15 millions. 1895, 1325 Europeans, about 839 of which Belgians. The English give 30 millions, but the detailed census now being taken in the separate districts does not appear to confirm this figure.

Population.

The countries of the Congo State embrace almost the entire Congo River territory with its tributaries, and particularly Urua, Kasongo, Katanga, Ulala and others. They are divided into districts, each of which has its commissioner.

Divisions.

Direct possession, but only a small part occupied. In the former province of Emin Pasha, the territory is leased by England (?).

Possession.

1876, September 12th. Conference of the "*Association Internationale Africaine*" in Brussels to consider the ways and means to civilise Central Africa.

History.

1877, Navigation of the Congo by Stanley.

1878, November 25th. Founding of the "*Comité d'Etudes du Haut Congo*".

1882, Founding of the "*Association Internationale du Congo*".

1884, February 26th. *Lord Granville's Agreement with Portugal*, by which the South-West coast of Africa between 5° 12' and 5° 18' North Latitude is recognised as Portuguese territory, whereby the territories of the Association Internationale would have been com-

pletely cut off from the sea. This treaty was not ratified by the Powers, and France made use of it to occupy the territory. — April, 22nd, the territories of the Association recognised by the American Union as a state.

1884, April 23rd. In a private treaty with Leopold II, as head of the Association Internationale Africaine, France receives the right of preemption of his territories on the Congo. The question arose later whether France possessed this right before or after Belgium; but it was settled in 1895 by Belgium being given the preference till 1900, in which year she will have to make a new agreement. — November, 8th. Treaty with Germany. — December, 16th, recognition of the Congo State by England.

1884, *November 1st, till February 26th, 1885; Berlin Conference. Founding of the Congo State and Free Trade Territory* for 20 years. (Passing of the Congo Act.) The territory in question is enclosed by a line which, starting at Cette Cama in the French Congo territories, takes in the Ogowe Territory and the greater part of the Cameroon Hinterland, includes the Ubangi Uelle territory, and terminates at the Indian Ocean below the 5° North Latitude. This frontierline begins in the South at Ambriz in the Portuguese Colony Angola, follows the course of the Logé, touches the source of the Kassai and Congo, bends a little South of the Bangweolo Lake, touches the lower course of the Zambesi and follows this stream to its mouth in the Indian Ocean. — 5th December. Agreement with France relative to the Licona Question.

1889, August 2nd. King Leopold's will, in which he bequeaths all his rights of sovereignty after his death to Belgium.

1890, Brussels Conference, which allows the Congo State to levy some taxes and duties in the free trade territory.

1890, July 21st. Territories of the Congo State declared inalienable, Belgium having already on the 3rd (25th and 30th) July, 1890, retained the right to annex the same after the expiration of 10 years.

1895. Right of preemption of France regulated, by which it stands second only to that of Belgium till 1900.

*Conventions* for the purpose of *frontier regulations* have been agreed upon between the Congo State and neighbouring states as follows:

- (a) 1883, July 2nd, with Portugal, ratified 24th March 1884.
- (b) 1884, November 8th, with Germany.
- (c) 1884, December 16th, with Great Britain.
- (d) 1884, December 27th, with the Netherlands relative to the possession of the numerous Dutch factories on the Congo.
- (e) 1885, February 5th (22nd November), with France *re* the North and East Frontiers.
- (f) 1885, February 14th, with Portugal.
- (g) 1887, April 29th, with France.
- (h) 1890, June 10th, with Portugal (Lunda).
- (i) 1891, May 25th, with Portugal (1st August, neutral treaty), 22nd November with France.
- (j) 1893, June 23rd, (1894, March 24th) with Portugal.
- (k) 1894, May 12th, with England relative to the leasing of the Bahr el Ghazâl territory and the Western part of the former province of Emin Pasha.
- (l) 1894, August 14th, renewed convention with France, which however has become unfeasible, although the Northern frontier was regulated by its means.

*The central government* has its seat at Brussels, and consists of the King of the Belgians and a state secretary for foreign, financial, and home affairs, under whom are a "Trésorier Général" and three general secretaries for the departments, foreign and juridical, financial and home. A High Court of Appeal also exists, and can be convened when required.

Government.  
Admini-  
stration.

*The local government* is formed by the Governor General, his representative, the state inspector, general secretary, administrator

of justice, financial director and the commander of the garrison. Seat of the local government, *Boma*.

## Portuguese Possession in Lower-Guinea.

**Official title.** *Angola* is the official title of these Portuguese Colonies, but it is also used officially and independently for the integral parts of the same, viz., *Cabinda, Congo, Ambriz, Loanda, Angola, Benguella and Mossámmedes*.

**Frontiers.**  
**Frontier.**  
**Regulations.** The possession is divided into two separate territories. The smaller, Cabinda, North of the mouth of the Congo, stretches from the Juba Factory on the coast to Massabi at the mouth of the Loango River, 100 km. Concerning the frontiers in the Interior see page 46. The part extending South of the lower course of the Congo, the *Northern frontier* of which is described on page 49, passes along the coast from the left bank of the Congo to the mouth of the Cunene River, a stretch of littoral of 1400 km. (*Treaties with the Congo State, 11th February, 1885, and with France, 12th May, 1886.*) The *Southern frontier* follows the lower course of the Cunene to the Humbé Cataracts, takes then an easterly direction to Mpaschi on the Cubango, and follows its course to 20° East Longitude of Greenwich (Ndara). (*Agreement between Portugal and Germany December, 30th, 1886.*)

According to the *Anglo-Portuguese Convention August 20th 1890*, the "*modus vivendi*" *November 14th 1890*, and the *Convention June, 11th, 1891*, the *East frontier*, which follows the 20° meridian East of Greenwich to that point where it meets the Kassai River, is of a provisional character. The line then follows the Kassai current towards the North, as described on page 50. By the *Anglo-Portuguese*

*Convention, August 20th 1896*, the Barotse Land was added to Portugal.

The area amounts to 1,315,450 sq. km. (English estimates, 457,500 square miles). Area.

The number of inhabitants is about 2,400,000 (according to English estimates only 2 millions; other authorities as low as 1,315,460). The Portuguese give the figures as about half a million. Population.

The territory embraces the former *Congo Kingdom*, whose ruler, Don Pedro V, was declared vassal to Portugal, the *Lunda Country* (Country of *Muata Jamwo*, Portugal's protectorate since 1886), *Loanda, Angola, Benguella, Mossamedes*, the Gangella territory, Amboella, Barotse, etc. Divisions.

The provinces on the coast and those extending to 15° Longitude East of Greenwich are actually considered as direct possession of the Portuguese; further East there is a Protectorate and Sphere of Interest. Privileged companies lease parts of the territory in the Interior, which apparently are very favourable for opening up. The same is the case in Mossamedes and elsewhere. Possession.

The Angola Coast was discovered in 1486 by the Portuguese, Diego Coão, and soon afterwards colonised by the Portuguese. History.

1578, The town São Paulo de Loanda founded.

1640, Blockade of the coast and siege of São Paulo de Loanda by the Dutch fleet under Hautebeen and expulsion of the Portuguese, who however recovered the land from Brazil in 1650 and have remained in undisturbed possession ever since.

A Portuguese Governor General resides in *São Polo de Loanda*, who receives his orders from Lisbon. Varia.

A circumstance worthy of particular notice is that Portugal did claim the whole South African territory between the

6° and 18° South Latitude on the West side, and the 11° and 28° South Latitude on the East across the Continent. The British destroyed the dream of an "Impero Portuguezio Sudafricano" by gravitating from Cape Colony towards Egypt. It cannot be denied that Portuguese merchants, the so-called "Pombeiros", had already in ancient times traversed the extensive territory of Angola to Mozambique, although this tract has never been governed or occupied by the Portuguese.

## Ascension, Tristan da Cunha, Walfish Bay.

*Ascension* — discovered on Ascension Day, 1502, by Juan de Nova, (hence the name) — 7° 57' South Latitude and 15° Longitude West of Greenwich, 750 Miles North-West of St. Helena, with an area of 88 sq. km. (35 square miles), and 140 inhabitants, is in British possession. Chief Town, *Georgetown*. 1815, occupied by British troops to guard Napoleon; since then British.

*Tristan da Cunha*, 37° 6' South Latitude and 12° 1' West Longitude of Greenwich, described officially as a small group of islands consisting of Tristan da Cunha, which the Portuguese discoverer named after himself, *Gough's Island*, *Inaccessible* and *Nightingale Islands*, rocky islands in British possession with 61 inhabitants, (1894). 1815, received an English garrison.

The British possession in *Walfish Bay*, with the frontiers which were more accurately fixed on the August, 7th, 1884, embraces the small territory at the approach to German South West Africa, almost at the Tropic of Capricorn. It has an area of 1320 sq. km. or 430 square miles, and 768 inhabitants (1891, 31 Europeans)

or 1·79 per square mile. The territory, which has been British since 1879, was added in 1884 to the Cape Colony. *Possession Island*, South of Walfish Bay, together with 8 to 10 uninhabited islands scattered along the coast, also belongs to the English. For particulars concerning Walfish Bay, see also Cape Colony, p. 59.

## St. Helena.

An island of volcanic origin lying South of 16° South Latitude, 153 sq. km. or 47 square miles, with 4116 inhabitants (1891), 33 to the sq. km. Population in 1895 has fallen to 3900 inhabitants, inclusive the garrison of 179 men. Exile of Napoleon I, 1815—1821; discovered by the Portuguese in 1502, but not colonised by them and soon afterwards deserted. In 1600 the Dutch took possession of the Island, and occupied it till 1673, when it was taken over by the British East India Company. Since 1815, it has been incorporated into the British Empire. There is much emigration to Cape Colony. Chief town: *Jamestown* (2300 inhab.).

## German South West Africa.

*Protectorate of the German Empire* (Schutzgebiete des deutschen Reiches): *Südwest-Afrika*; *German Damaraland*, *German Namaland*. Official title.

The *Western frontier* extends along the Atlantic coast, (excepting Walfish Bay which is British), from the mouth of the Cunene River a distance of 1500 km. (930 miles) to the mouth of the Orange River. The right bank of the Orange River to 20° East Longitude of Greenwich forms the South frontier. The *East frontier* is formed, *in the terms of the Memorandum of December 1884, and the* Frontiers.

*Anglo-German treaty, 1st July 1890*, by the 20th Meridian East of Greenwich as far as the 22° South Latitude. Here the frontier bends towards the East, till it meets the 21° Longitude East of Greenwich, follows this to the 18° South Latitude, where it crosses the Tshobe River, and follows its course to the point where the latter discharges itself into the Zambesi. The *North Frontier* (Portuguese-German treaty 30th December 1886) is formed by the course of the Cunene as far as the Humbé cataracts; it then continues in a straight line to Mpashi, on the Cubango, along the right bank of this river to Ndara on the Okavango, and to the Katima Falls on the Zambesi. As the course of the Okavango has been inaccurately surveyed, the demarcation of the tract of land towards the Zambesi is uncertain. It still awaits an exact settlement.

**Area.** The area is estimated at 835,100 sq. km. or 320,000 square miles.

**Population.** The population numbers 200,000; 1896, 2050 Europeans (about 700 Germans and 300 Englishmen).

**Divisions.** The territory includes Gross Nama-(Namaqua) land and Damara-land with the Kaoko and Amboland, Lüderitzland, Upingtonia, and several other tracts.

**Possession.** Direct possession; only a small part, however, is actually occupied. The opening up is left to different companies: West Africa Company Lim., South-West Africa Company, German Colonial Company for South-West Africa, Kharaskhoma Exploring and Prospecting Syndicate, the Hanseatic Land, Mining and Trading Company for South-West Africa, South African Territories Company and several others.

**History.** This extensive territory was until 1880 not under European influence. A stretch of littoral 150 km. broad, from the Orange River to the 26° South Latitude, which was acquired by the Bremen merchant, F. A. E. Lüderitz, on the 1st of May and 25th of August 1883, and further acquisitions by German subjects on the coast

North of 26° to Cape Frio, with the exception of Walfish Bay, were placed under German protection on the 24th April, 1884. On the 12th August, 1884 additions were made, the coast-line being extended from 26° South Latitude to Cape Frio. Recognised by England, 22nd September.

1884, *December, Memorandum*, concerning the frontier towards British Bechuanaland. Treaties with the chiefs, August 18th, October 11th and October 28th. Treaties.  
Frontier  
Regulation.

1885, *Treaties with the chiefs* in January and March, July 28th, September 2nd, September 15th, October 21st and November 3rd.

1886, *December 30th, Treaty with Portugal* (published 21st July 1887) *re* Northern frontier. Upingtonia under German Protection.

1890, *July 1st, Treaty with England re* Eastern frontier.

1893—1895, War with Hendrik Witbooi.

Governed by an Imperial Commissioner who resides at *Great-Windhoek*.

The Imperial Government intends by degrees to declare it a crown land, after having fixed the limits of the native reservations and to divide it into farms of about 1000 to 10,000 hectares each. Government.  
Varia.

## Cape Colony.

*Cape Colony (Cape of Good Hope).*

Official title.

To the Cape Colony belongs the colony proper, i. e., those lands which before the time of the reorganisation in 1875 formed a part of the same. It has an area of 191,416 square miles and a population of 956,485 (1891).\*) These are Frontiers.  
Area.  
Population.  
Divisions.

\*) Statesman's Year Book, 1897, fol. 170 and Dr. A. Petermann's Mittheilungen from Justus Perthes, Geographical Institute, Gotha, 1896, fol. 89 etc.

	Surface in square miles	Europeans	Natives	Total	Per square mile
Colony proper . . .	191,416	336,938	619,547	956,485	5.00
West Griqualand .	15,197	29,670	53,705	83,375	5.49
East Griqualand .	7,594	4,150	148,468	152,618	20.10
Tembuland . . .	4,122	5,179	175,236	180,415	43.77
Transkei . . . .	2,552	1,019	152,544	153,563	60.16
Walfish Bay . . . .	430	31	737	768	1.79
Total:	221,311	376,987	1,150,237	1,527,224	6.90

In 1896 the population of the whole of Cape Colony was estimated at 1,725,739 (376,812 Europeans), and the area at 225,180 square miles.

*Transkei*, *Tembuland* and *East Griqualand* are the Kaffir districts, which between 1876 and 1880 were made part of Cape Colony. In 1886 and 1887 parts of Pondoland (Xesibeland and Rode Valley) were added. *West Griqualand* was annexed by Cape Colony in 1871 in consequence of the discovery of diamonds: in 1873 it was again separated, being annexed for a second time as a province in 1880 after the repeated claims of the Orange Free State had been satisfied by England paying £ 90,000. *British Bechuanaland* (60,770 square miles and 60,376 inhabitants, 1891), since the September 30th, 1885, a crown colony. North of West Griqualand, has been connected with Cape Colony since the 16th November, 1895, including the Western district between the Molopo, Nosob and the Anglo-German frontier, which till 1891 belonged to the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

*Pondoland* forms a sort of Personal Union with Cape Colony and has 200,000 inhabitants. Became a British Protectorate in 1878 (the coast being acquired 5th January 1885) and was annexed on the 25th September, 1894, by Cape Colony. The Governor of Cape Colony has been Governor of Pondoland since the 3rd April 1894.

The course of the Orange river serves roughly as the Northern frontier: Together with the Molopo River and the frontier of the Orange Free State.

Since 1878, the Governor of Cape Colony superintends, as Her Majesty's High Commissioner for South Africa, *Basutoland, Bechuanaland Protectorate*, the territory of the *British South Africa Company*, and also since February 1896 the territory of *Montisioa*, Chief of Barolong, North of British Bechuanaland, who died in the autumn of 1896, and of *Ikanning*, Chief of Bamaliti (North of Mafeking) which was separated from the British South African Company's territory in 1895. For both these territories an assistant commissioner is appointed.

The collective territories form the direct possession of Great Britain. **Possession.**

1486, Bartholomew Diaz discovered the Cape of Good Hope, and the Portuguese vainly endeavoured to found a colony there. **History.**

1601, The Dutch East India Co establishes a peasant colony at the Cape, and builds in 1651 a fortress, where Cape Town is at present situated.

1620, The English East India Co attempts to colonise the Cape.

1652, Van Riebeeck succeeds in establishing a Dutch colony of the Netherlands East India Co at the Cape.

1688—1689, Huguenot immigration to Cape Colony.

1776, August, Whilst attempting to regain Cape Colony, the Dutch fleet was captured by Elphinstone in the Saldanha Bay.

1781, First war with the Ama Kossa Kaffirs.

1795, Revolution of the Boers against the Dutch East India Co.

1795, September 16th, The English establish themselves in Cape Colony without striking a blow, and conquer the land as far as the Great Fish River.

1797, Rising of the Boers and beginning of the frictions with the English.

1803, Cape Colony, which had become French territory, restored to Holland.

1806, The English reconquer Cape Colony, which is ceded to them on payment of 3 millions *l* sterling.

1820, Extensive immigration of Scotchmen to the Cape; Port Elisabeth founded.

1823, Founding of a British settlement in Natal.

1837, Dutch Boers cross the great mountains, and settle in Natal. Emigration of the Boers northwards and defeat of Umsalekaze (Mosilekatze) near Mosilekatze's Neck.

1839, The Boers found the Natal Free States, which the English Government tries to incorporate with the Cape Colony.

1840, The Boer and Kaffir wars break out. Natal declared a British possession, whereupon the Boers wander northwards in two great bodies.

1848, The English occupy the Boer States North of the Orange Free State; the Boers cross the Vaal and found Transvaal.

1858, More than 2000 hardy peasants from Germany are allotted farms in British Kaffraria, including many belonging to the German legion raised by England for service in the Crimea.

1865, Incorporation of British Kaffraria.

1868, Incorporation of Basutoland, and 1871, West Griqualand.

1877, Extension of England's royal prerogative over free Kaffirland and the Transvaal.

1878—1879, Zulu War.

1879, January 22nd, Battle of Isandula, in which the English were defeated by the Zulus and 858 out of 1329 English soldiers killed or wounded. Followed by the decisive battle of Ulundi under Lord Chelmsford followed, when the Zulu power was completely shattered. June 1st, death of Prince Napoleon. August 18th, Cetewayo made prisoner.

1886, December 10th, Pondoland incorporated.

1887, Zululand divided (14th May annexation) and the foundation of a new South African State, "Vryheid", which a few months later was connected with the Transvaal.

Cape Colony proper is divided into 74 districts, and its dependencies into 29 divisions. A Governor is at the head of the Colony with an Executive Council. The Legislative Council consists of 22 members, who are elected every seven years. The Colony is managed by a Governor and five Ministers of State. Each district has its own resident magistrate, who is also Civil Commissioner, and a council of six members. The Seat of Government is *Capetown* (83,718 inhabitants in 1891) or, without the suburbs only 51,251.

Divisions.  
Government,  
Varia.

## Bechuanaland.

*The Bechuanaland Protectorate* (since 27th February [30th September] 1885) embraces the South African territories between the Molopo River, about 26° South Latitude, in the South; and the Zambesi, Tshobe, and Okavango in the North; German South West-Africa in the West; and the South African Republic and Matabeleland in the East. The area is 386,200 square miles and the population about 100,000. The greater part of the territory is made up of a waterless desert overgrown by thicket, with here and there a sprinkling of forest. It is only properly fertile in the East. According to the terms of a *Resolution of Council, the 4th July, 1890*, the territory was placed under the jurisdiction of the Governor of British Bechuanaland, but on the *18th November, 1895*, when it was annexed by the Cape as the Crown Colony, British Bechuanaland, *new agreements* were made. According to these, the Chartered Company of South Africa was to take over the management;

but the leading chiefs of the country protested, being dissatisfied with the project of building a railway through the country towards the North. The result of their protests was that the districts of the chiefs, Khama of Bamangwato (chief town, Palachwe, 25,000 inhabitants), Sebele of Bakwena, Batoen of the Bangwaketse, Mantsioa, chief of the Barolong tribe of the Boratsile, and Ikanning, chief of the Bamaliti, were, according to the State Papers, Nos. 40 and 43, of the English Bluebook C. 7962, London 1896, subjected to a strict demarcation, and Khama, Sebele, and Bathoen were informed that they might rule their land as usual, "under the protection of the Queen." The Queen is represented by various officials. The country forming the protectorate outside the provinces of the chiefs mentioned is governed by the South Africa Company, with the exception of Mantsioa's and Ikanning's territories, which were placed under the High Commissioner of Cape Colony on the 3rd February, 1896, after being subordinated to the South Africa Company on the 18th October, 1895. Seat of the authorities, *Shoshong*.

Only the possessions and claims of the Bakhatla chief, Lenchwe, remain still unsettled. He will have to come to a decision personally. Owing to the construction of railways, and the mining in the neighbouring districts, as well as to the rapid political changes characterising this part of Africa, things are by no means definitely settled. On the 6th August and 25th October, 1882, the Boers established the Republics of *Stellaland* (15,490 sq. km, 15,500 inhabitants), and *Goosen* (10,400 sq. km and 17,000 inhabitants); but they are no longer existing. In 1884, Stellaland was placed under British Protectorate.

---

# Territory of the Chartered Company of British South Africa. (Rhodesia, British Zambesia.)

The names, *Rhodesia*, *British Zambesia*, and *British Central Africa*, do not exactly constitute the official titles of the lands of the *Chartered Company of British South Africa*, but are often used to denote the collective territories situated North and West of the South African Republic and the 22° South Latitude on the one side, and German East Africa, Congo State, Angola, German South West Africa, and Bechuanaland on the other. *Zambesia* is in a sense an official title, the name Rhodesia on the other hand is quite unofficial. Official title.

The course of the Zambesi divides the Dominions of the Company into two parts: *Northern Zambesia* on the left bank, and *Southern Zambesia* on the right bank. According to the terms of the *Anglo-German Agreement of the 1st July, 1890*, the *West frontier* of Southern Zambesia, with which the greater part of the present Bechuanaland Protectorate is still united for administrative purposes, commences at the mouth of the Orange River, and follows its course as far as the 20° Longitude East of Greenwich, which, in turn, it follows Northwards until it cuts the 22° parallel, thence running to the point where it touches the 21° Longitude East of Greenwich. Its further course is Northward to the 18° parallel, which it pursues as far as the Tshobe River and Zambesia. (See p. 57) *The East frontier* was determined by the *Anglo-Portuguese Treaty 11th June, 1891*, as follows: A straight line beginning opposite the mouth of the Aroangva or Loangvariver, which flows into the Zambesi near Zumbo, and proceeds directly South to the 16° parallel, Frontiers.

follows this till its connection with the 31° meridian East of Greenwich, then passing directly South to the point where the Mazoe River touches the 33° Longitude East of Greenwich. The frontier then follows this meridian southwards to the 18° 30' South Latitude, cuts the Manica Plain (1884 occupied by Portugal), along the watershed, winds towards the South-West to the conflux of the Sabi and Lunti, whence it runs to the North-Easterly point of the South-African Republic. The frontier at the watershed on the Manica Plain is evidently drawn in such a manner that no more any territory West of 32° 30' East Longitude of Greenwich shall belong to Portugal. Again, Great Britain has no more any claim to the land beyond 33° East Longitude of Greenwich. The Tati gold district between the Shashi and Ramaquaban Rivers is excluded from the Company's territory, and likewise the tract of land between the Shashi and Maklutji Rivers and Khama's district North of the 22° parallel.

*Northern Zambesi* is included politically in *British Central Africa* (which see), being only administratively connected with the lands of the British South Africa Company. For the Western and Northern frontiers see page 49, "Congo State" and "Portuguese Lower Guinea".

- Area.** Area of operations of the Company, 750,000 square miles.
- Population.** Population uncertain, but may be safely computed at 2,500,000.
- Divisions.** Since 1888 *Mashonaland* and *Matabeleland* have formed the heart of the Company's possession.
- Possession.** *Southern Zambesia* is the direct possession of the Company. Since February 1891, the Company has also governed the North Zambesia territory, (except Nyassaland); the Royal Commissioner of which works together with the Company, whose officials are also placed under him. English Bluebook 1895, C 7637. This was the *status quo* till the 1st of January 1896.

1888, February 11th (5th June). Treaty of peace with the Matabele Prince, Lobengula. — 25th July. Demarcation of the British Sphere of Interest.

By the *Royal Charter of the 29th October, 1889*, the British Sphere of Interest South of Zambesi and Tshobe was handed over for management to the Company. History.

1890, August 20th. Frontier treaty with Portugal.

1891, May 9th. The Sphere of Power of the High Commissioner of Cape Colony was extended to this territory. (Blue Book 1894 C 7383). — 28th May. New Frontier treaty with Portugal.

1894, Matabele War; capture of Bulawayo.

1896, Dr. Jameson's raid into the Transvaal and renewed rising of the Matabele.

1897, January 30th. Arbitration *re* the Manica Plain.

The territory is divided into 13 Districts, excepting North Zambesi, which is undivided. Government  
Varia.

Government Offices, *Salisbury* and *Bulawayo*, 2000 inhabitants.

---

## British Central Africa.

Under the title of *British Central Africa* (usually abbreviated into B. C. A.) is comprised since 22nd February 1893 the territory of the English Sphere of Interest North of the Zambesi River. Official title.

The frontier line runs from the East Shore of the Nyassa Lake, viz., from the parallel at which the Rovuma River joins the M'Sinje, thence Southwards to 13° 30' South Latitude and the East shore of Chiuta Lake, which it follows. Here the line runs in a straight line to the East shore of the Kilwa Lake, along which it continues Frontiers.

its course until it reaches the extreme South-Easterly point. The frontier next proceeds to the extreme Easterly affluent of the Ruo River, following the course of the former and the Ruo till they discharge themselves into the Shiré. From this point, the frontier turns in a North Westerly direction towards Chiwanga, and runs along the watershed between the Zambesi and the Nyassa Lake, till it touches the 14° South Latitude. The frontier from this spot is directed towards that point where the 15° Latitude meets with the Aroanga or Loangva, and follows the river-bed of the latter as far as the Zambesi (*Anglo-Portuguese Agreement, 11th June, 1891*). The South frontier is formed by the Zambesi River. The Western boundary line begins on the Zambesi at the Katima Falls, and stretches in a northerly direction along the river to the Kabompo, whence it passes to the frontiers of the Congo States. (*Anglo-Portuguese Treaty, 31st May, 1893; valid till July 1898.*) No decision was then reached with regard to the possessory rights of Barotseland. (See Portuguese Lower Guinea). In accordance with the *Anglo-Portuguese Convention, 20th August, 1896*, Barotseland was definitely added to Portugal. German East Africa forms the North frontier from the South point of the Tanganyika to Naronga on the Nyassa Lake. The remainder of the frontier line runs across the Nyassa Lake as far as the parallel of the Rovuma-M'Sinje junction.

**Area.** Including the British Central Africa Protectorate, the territory measures 500,000 square miles.

**Population.** The number of inhabitants is uncertain, but is most likely 4 millions. Number of Europeans 350 (1895), of which 32 are English.

**Divisions.** The former dominion of *Kazembe, North Zambesi*. For the territory on the West Shore of the Nyassa Lake see page 69.

The whole territory is a Sphere of Interest. For the Protectorate see page 69.

Great Britain has occupied the territory since the beginning of 1891. Possession.

1858—1873, Livingstone's journeys into the Interior, his first course being across the Continent from East to West. His death occurred at Dsitiambo's village in the Bangweolo Lake district. History.

The following districts are administered by the British South Africa Company (which see): Tshambesi, Tanganyika, Meru and Luapula. Seat of the authorities, 1895, *Fort Rosebery*. Varia.

---

## British Central Africa Protectorate. (Nyassaland.)

The land on the South and West shore of the Nyassa Lake has borne this name since the decree of the 14th May, 1891. It was then separated from British Central Africa, and placed under a Royal Commissioner and Consul-General, who also superintends Northern Zambesi, as explained on page 66. The West frontier runs from North to South scarcely 100 km. distant from the West Shore of the Nyassa. The area and population have never been properly estimated. 1896, the returns for the population were 844,995, including 259 English. The whole country is divided into twelve districts, in each of which are one or two administrative officers. The chief town and residence of the Commissioner is *Blantyre* with 6000 inhabitants, including 100 Europeans. Seat of the Administration, *Zomba* on the Shiré. The garrison is formed by 200 Sikhs of the Indian Army. For the purpose of communication with the sea, Portugal has ceded to the British Government in Tshinde, on the Indian Ocean, "a small piece of land" as a so-called "British concession", at the only navigable mouth of the Zambesi.

---

## Basutoland.

This territory is situated on the right bank of the Upper Orange River, and surrounded by the Orange Free State, Natal, and Cape Colony. It has 26,640 sq. km. or 10,293 square miles, with 250,000 inhabitants (1895) including 600 Europeans. It was annexed in August 1871, and on the 18th March 1884 placed directly under the Crown. Governed by a Resident Commissioner working under the High Commissioner for South Africa.

Chief Town, *Maseru*, 862 inhabitants (inclusive of 99 Europeans).

---

## Natal.

- Official title.** *Colony of Natal.*
- Frontiers.** The land borders in the North on the Orange Free State and the South African Republic together with Zululand (frontier river, Tugela), in the East on the Indian Ocean (200 miles), in the South on Cape Colony (East Griqualand), Pondoland, and Basutoland.
- Area.** Estimated at 42,920 sq. km. (20,461 square miles).
- Population.** In 1891, 543,913, made up of 46,788 Europeans, 41,142 natives of British India and 455,983 Kaffirs. In 1895, 544,000.
- Possession.** Formerly an integral part of Cape Colony. Natal was converted into an independent Crown Colony on the 15th July 1856, and in 1866 increased by the addition of Alfred County (the most Southerly Coast district). The charter of the Constitution was altered in 1875, 1879, and 1893.

The coast was discovered by Vasco da Gama on Christmas Day, 1497, hence the name. History.

1719, Founding of a Dutch colony, soon afterwards abandoned.

1834, Settlement of English emigrants.

1835, The republic "*Victoria*" was founded by Captain Gardiner but dissolved in 1838.

1837, Gert Maritz and Andreas Pretorius founded in Natal the Batavisch Afrikaansche Maatschappij and Pietermaritzburg.

1840, Expulsion of the Boers by the English. The former wandered into the territory of the Vaal and Orange.

1893, July 20th, Natal becomes an independent colony with a responsible government.

The governor rules in the Queen's name, assisted by a legislative council and a legislative assembly together with five Ministers appointed by him. Government.  
Various.

Capital and residence of the Governor, *Pietermaritzburg*.  
17,500 inhabitants (1891).

---

## Zululand and Tongoland.

The British possession *Zululand* (annexed 14th May 1887) lies to the North-East of Natal, and borders on the North and West on the South African Republic and Tongoland (Tongola River, Maputa and Usutu Rivers, Swasiland), on the East on the Indian Ocean (*Convention of England with the South African Republic, 20th June 1888*). It embraces the former Zulu Reserve, the greater part of the dominion of Cetewayo who died 9th February 1884 and that of Usibebu, and Santa Lucia Bay (12,500 square miles, 22,320 sq. km. with 165,121 (1895) inhabitants, including about 1246 whites). The territory is administered by

the Governor of Natal. The Commissioner has his residence at *Eshowe*, (100 whites). 1888 and 1890, some territories on the other side of the former North frontier towards the Mkusi River were joined to Zululand. 23rd April, 1895, by a proclamation of the Governor concerning the intended railway from the sea to the South African Republic, the territories of the chiefs of Umbegeza, Mdhlaleni Sambane and others were joined to Zululand, the union being confirmed by a Royal Order of the 8th June, 1895. *Anglo-Portuguese Treaty 28th May, 1891*. English Bluebooks C 7780 and C 7878, London 1895. See also Petermann's geograph. Mittheilungen, 1896 f. 90.

*Tongoland*, Amatongo, situated North of Zululand; friendly treaty with England since 6th July, 1887; 5000 sq. km. with 31,000 inhabitants. On 30th May, 1895, made a British Protectorate, and placed under the government of Natal. (English Blue Book C 7395, London 1885.) The North frontier was regulated by an *agreement with Portugal 28th May, 1891*. Further agreements are dated 29th November (3rd December) 1887; 1888 (with Zambila) and August 1890.

The British annexations in Zululand and Tongoland Protectorate render it impossible for the South African Republic to build a railroad to the South without passing through British territory. The Boer Free State is therefore entirely cut off from the sea.

---

## Orange Republic.

**Official title.**

*Oranje Vrijstaat (Orange Free State).*

**Frontiers.**

The South Frontier is formed by Cape Colony near the course of the Orange River; the East frontier by Basutoland and Natal, the North frontier by the South African Republic (Vaal River), and the West frontier by West Griqualand.

131,070 sq. km. (48,326 square miles).	Area.
1890 — 207,503 (129,787 natives); 1895 — 220,000.	Population.
Independent State.	Possession.
In 1836 the territory was still a wilderness inhabited by Bechuans and Bushmen. When in 1834 the British proclaimed the abolition of the slave trade in Cape Colony, the Boers wandered with their slaves into the territory of the present Republic, and founded there a free state, which, being taken by the English in 1848, and on the 23th February 1854 declared independent, received on the 10th April of the same year a constitution, which was revised on the 9th February 1866 and 8th May 1879. On the abolition of slavery by the Boers, the latter received from England in 1854 all the possessions belonging to them in the territory of the free state. Since then the country has been quietly developing.	History.
1897, May 25th. Commercial treaty with Germany. — June 17th, Union with the South African Republic.	
The legislature for the 19 districts consists of a Volksraad with 58 members and an executive with a president, who is elected every five years. Capital: <i>Bloemfontein</i> , 3,457 inhabitants, of which, in 1890, 2077 were Afrianders or Europeans.	Government. Various.

## South African Republic (Formerly Transvaal).

<i>Zuidafrikaansche Republiek</i> , formerly <i>Transvaal-Vrijstaat</i> .	Official title.
In the West the territory borders on Bechuanaland and British Central Africa, the boundary line being formed by the Limpopo or	Frontiers.

Crocodile River (*Convention with England 27th February 1884*). In the North it borders on the territory of the British South Africa Company; in the East on Portuguese East-Africa, Zulu, and Tongoland; and in the South on Natal and the Orange Free State.

- Area.** Total Area, 308,560 sq. km., 119,139 square miles.
- Population.** April 1895, 790,000.
- Divisions.** Besides the Transvaal proper, the territory of the Republic includes also, since 1887, *the New Republic*, Zululand, which was founded by the Boers on the 16th August, 1884, under the name "*Vryheid*", and (since 10th December 1894), the Protectorate state of *Swasiland*, declared independent in 1884 (18,140 sq. km., 41,000 inhabitants, 1000 Europeans), the Republic being unable to incorporate it.
- Possession.** Independent State, whose foreign affairs are so far limited by *Paragraph IV of the treaty with England 27th February 1884*, that *England has a right of veto in all state treaties within six months*.
- History.**  
**Treaties.** The state was formed by those Boers who emigrated in 1835 from Cape Colony to Natal, but who left the latter territory when it was annexed by England and declared a crown colony.
- 1852, February 17th, England's recognition of the independence of the State.
1853. Founding of Pretoria. Proclamation of the Constitution in 33 Articles (from 23rd May, 1849).
- 1858, February 13th, passing of the Grondwet or Fundamental Laws.
- 1869, July 29th, Frontier regulation treaty with Portugal.
- 1875, Ignatz Maritz founded the Small Free State.
- 1877, April 12th, England annexes the Transvaal.
- 1880, Commencement of the war with England.
- 1880, January and February. Battles by Laing's Neck on the Ingogo and near Majuba.

1881, March 21st. Volksraad resolution, 26th October, 1881. Restitution of the Transvaal State in reference to home affairs, the management and control of foreign affairs being made subject to the suzerainty of the Queen of England.

1884, *February 27th* (August 3rd 1881) *Convention with England* (ratified by the Volksraad August 8th 1884) by which *England's suzerainty for the control of foreign affairs of the State was restricted*, and the State for political reasons adopted the name of the "*South African Republic*".

1887, September 14th. Incorporation of the New Republic.

1888, June 20th. England's recognition of the alterations in the South African Republic.

1889, March 13th, Mashona and Matabeleland fall under the British Sphere of Interest.

1890, June 23rd, Revision of the constitution; 2nd August, frontier treaty with England and incorporation of the Small Free State; August 4th, Incorporation of a part of Swasiland (Swasiland Convention).

1894, December 10th. Swasiland becomes a protectorate state of the South African Republic. Although not incorporated, the Boers have had the right of legislating and administering justice since the 21st February, 1895.

1896, December. Dr. Jameson's invasion and march to Johannesburg.

1897, March, (June 17th). Union with the Orange Free State.

At the head of the State is a president, elected every three years and supported by two chambers the Eerste Raad and the Volksraad, each composed of 24 members.

Capital: *Pretoria*, 8000 inhabitants.

## Portuguese East Africa.

- Official title.** *Estado d' Africa Oriental*, formerly *Moçambique* and *Sofala*.
- Frontiers.** The *East frontier* is formed by the Indian Ocean from the Kosi Bay, about 27° South Latitude, to Cape Delgado at the mouth of the Rovuma, about 10° 30' South Latitude; the *North frontier*, towards German East Africa, by the course of the Rovuma (*German-Portuguese-English agreement, 29th October and 30th December, 1886 and 1st July 1890; re the territory at the mouth of the river [Kionga bay] September 1894*) to 11½° South Latitude, whence it runs in a straight line to the East shore of the Nyassa Lake. The frontier next follows the shore of the lake towards the South as far as the 13° 30' South Latitude. From this point it is formed by the hitherto inaccurately defined frontier on the Manica Plain (*vide Anglo-Portuguese convention of the 28th May and 11th June, 1891*). From Limpopo onwards the territory is bordered by the S. A. Republic. In the *South*, the Estado borders on British Tongo-land and Zululand.
- Area.** The area amounts to 768,740 sq. km., (261,700 square miles.)
- Population.** Population, 1,500,000; other authorities, 768,740 to 2½ millions.
- Divisions.** The territory embraces the districts of Cape Delgado, Ibo, Moçambique, Inhambane, Quilimane, Senna, Tete, Sumbo, Gasaland, Sofala, Laurenço Marquez, Delagoa Bay (the "key" to South Africa) and several small islands. The land is divided into two parts, by the course of the Zambesi *Moçambique* North of the Zambesi, and *Lau-renço Marquez*, South of same, with capitals bearing the same name.
- Possession.** Direct possession, which nevertheless, according to Royal Decree of the September 30th, 1891, is leased for 25 years to private companies for opening up and general management.
- History.** Vasco da Gama discovered the coast in 1498, and it was soon
- Treaties.** afterwards colonised by Tristan da Cunha and became the scene of

many immigrations. The territory was connected administratively with Goa in the East Indies till 1752.

Frontier.  
Regulation.

1869, July 29th, *Frontier regulation treaty* with Transvaal.

1870, Abolition of slavery.

1878, Arbitration by the French Marshall, Mac Mahon, whereby Portugal obtained definite possession of Delagoa Bay, claimed by England. Disputes arose with England (African Lakes Co, Building of the Stevenson Road, Cardosa, Serpa Pinto), which resulted in England's colonisation work on the Lake Nyassa. England maintained the right of preemption of Delagoa Bay.

1884, Portuguese occupation of Manica.

1885, October 14th, *Protection treaty with the Zulus* under Gungunhana.

1888, April 27th, Reclamation of Mashonaland.

1890, August 20th, An un-ratified treaty with England relative to the Zambesi basins.

1891, *May 28th*, Renewed *frontier treaty with England*.

1891, July 30th, Formation of the Inhambane and Mozambique Companies.

1891, September 30th, Formation of the Estado d'Africa Oriental. **Government.**

1895, February. Regulation of the German frontier.

1896, December 9th. Definitive regulation of the German-Portuguese frontier.

1897, April. — Bern Arbitration re Delagoa Bay railway.

A Royal Commissioner General, appointed for three years, rules the state as Governor and has his seat in *Laurenço Marquez* (1700 Europeans; 5000—6000 black inhabitants, 700 Portuguese, [1897]). The native chiefs in the various districts are subject to him as *Capitães moroes*. An important railroad runs from *Laurenço Marquez* (1895, 57 miles laid by the Portuguese and 290 miles by the Netherland Company) to the South African Republic (Pretoria). A line is also being built from Beira to Salisbury in Rhodesia.

**Varia.**

## Madagascar and Dependencies.

**Official title.** *Madagascar.*

**Divisions.** Besides the large island, the *St. Marie, Nossi Bé, and Glorioso Islands* are regarded as dependencies of Madagascar, the former on the N. E. side, and the latter on the N. W. side of the Island.

**Area.** Area, 591,563 sq. km. (228,500 square miles) with the surrounding islets, 591,964 sq. km. (1650 km. greatest length, 520 km. greatest breadth, 400 km. average width.

**Population.** Population: 3,500,000 (French official indication 1897: from five to six Millions). Malay Hovas: 1 Million, Sakalavas: 1 Million, Betsiloes: 600,000, Betsimisarakas: 400,000, Southern races: 200,000.

**Possession.** Since August 1896, direct French possession.

**History.** Madagascar was mentioned by Marco Polo as early as the 13th Century. 10th August, 1506, discovered by the Portuguese d'Almeida, who called it São Lourenco. Under Louis XIV declared French possession; the kingdom of the Malegassies however remained intact. Subsequently the last dominion collapsed.

1814, Reconquest of Foulepointe, Tamatave and St. Marie by the French.

1822, Expulsion of the French by Radama I, who was supported by England, whereupon Ranavalo I expelled all Europeans from the island.

1845, Franco-British Expedition against Madagascar.

1862, In consequence of having conceded land to the Frenchman Lambert, Radama II was killed. His wife and successor, Rasoherina, formed an alliance with England and the U. S. A. to her ultimate detriment.

1868, *August 8th*, Renewed treaty with France.

1869, Ranavaloa II adopts Christianity through English influence; wars and rebellions follow.

1885, *December 17th*. At the end of the French war, France obtained the right, *by a treaty*, to maintain a general resident on the island and to control foreign affairs. (Occupation of Diego Suarez Bay by France.)

1890, England recognises the French protectorate of the island, but the natives oppose any kind of protectorate whatever.

1895, May, French war with Madagascar. The taking of the Capital on the 1st October led to the occupation of the island.

1896, July 11th and August 3rd, Decree of the French Government concerning the reorganisation of the island.

1896, August 6th, Official proclamation of the annexation of the island by France in January, which is recognised by the U. S. A.

The Hovas have been allowed to retain the Royal dignity (the Prime Minister is also the Queen's husband). Ranavaloa III has reigned since the 13th July 1883. Capital: *Antananarivo*, 100,000 inhabitants. Seaport: Tamatave, 10,000 Inhabitants. Slavery still exists in a patriarchal sense, although abolished by a proclamation on the 8th March, 1889.

Government.  
Varia.

The surrounding islands, which are dependencies of Madagascar, are *St. Marie*, since 1643 French, with 165 sq. km. (64 square miles) and 7667 Inhabitants, and *Nossi Bé*, 393 sq. km. or 113 square miles and 7700 Inhabitants. These islands were formerly direct French possession, as also was *Diego Suarez* (4567 inhab.) on the North Coast.

The uninhabited islands are *Juan de Nova*, *Bassas de India* and *Europa*.

## Mauritius and Dependencies.

- Official title.** *Colony of Mauritius, formerly Isle de France.*
- Divisions.** The Easterly Mascarenhas Island, *Mauritius*, belongs to the Colony of *Mauritius*, together with the islands *Rodriguez* 110 sq. km., *Diego Garcia*, *Amirantes*, *Seychelles*, of which only Mahé and Praslin are inhabited, the *Tshagos Islands*, *Trois frères* or *Eagle Islands*, the *Cosmoledo Islands* (*Oil Islands*) *Assumption*, *St. Brandon* or *Cargados* (16° 50' and 16° 20' South Latitude and 56° 16' to 59° 14' Longitude East of Greenwich), and lastly the *Aldabra Islands* 157 sq. km.
- Area.** Mauritius, 705 square miles, Seychelles 264 sq. km., Amirantes 13 sq. km. Total area of the dependencies, 172 square miles.
- Population.** Mauritius 370,588 (1891) (1895; 375,000) inhabitants, two thirds of whom are Indians and 3400 Chinese; the Seychelles 16,400 (1891); Amirantes 100 (1891); Rodriguez 2061 (1891); Diego Garcia 700.
- Possession.** Direct possession of Great Britain.
- History.** The Mascarenhas Islands were discovered in 1505 and 1507 by the Portuguese Pietro Mascarenhas. Mauritius (discovered 1507) was occupied in 1591 by the Dutch under Van Neck, who named the island after his sovereign. 1712 evacuated by the Dutch, 1721 occupied by France, who ceded Mauritius and the Seychelles in 1814 to England.
- Varia.** Capital of Mauritius and seat of the Governor, *Port Louis*, 58,244 inhabitants (1894). Chief town of the Seychelles *Mahé*.
-

## Réunion and Dependencies.

*Réunion (Isle de Bourbon).*

Official title.

The islands *Mayotta* (since 26th January 1896), *St. Paul*, and *New Amsterdam*, which Great Britain ceded to France, in 1892, together with the uninhabited *Kerguelen islands*, annexed by France in 1893, are dependencies of the westerly Mascarenhas Island. *St. Paul* is the oldest French settlement in the Indian Ocean.

Divisions.

The area of Réunion is 2512 sq. km. or 965 square miles, of *Mayotta* 366 sq. km. or 140 sq. m.

Area.

167,847 (1893) inhabitants, one-fifth whites, 23,161 British Indians, 412 Chinese (1892). *Mayotta* contains 8706 inhabitants (1893).

Population.

Direct possession of France.

Possession.

1505, discovered by Pietro Mascarenhas; 1631, the island was colonised by the French merchant Gobert from Dieppe. It was used for a long time as a convict station. 1764, conquered by the English. 1784 returned to France, and the island has remained since then a French possession. *Mayotta* has belonged since 1843 to France.

History.

Capital: *St. Denis*; sends one Senator and two Deputies to the French Chamber of Deputies.

Varia.

## The Comoro Islands.

*Les Comores.*

Official title.

This archipelago, situated North West of Madagascar, consists of the islands *Great Comoro*, *Mohilla*, and *Johanna*. The small uninhabited islands situated North of Madagascar also belong to this group,

Divisions.

viz., *Assumption, Astove, Cosmoledo, St. Pierre, Providence, Cerf and Farquhar*, together with the *Wizard Cliffs; Tromelin, Galega, and Garayos* are unoccupied.

- Area.** 1972 sq. km. (620 sq. m.) area of the Comoro Islands.
- Population.** Comoros 61,700 (according to British authorities 53,000).
- Possession.** Protectorate of the French Republic; Mayotta French possession since 1845.
- Varia.** The French Protectorate came into force on the basis of the *treaty* dated Johanna, *24th April, 1886.*

---

## Zanzibar.

- Official title.** *Zanzibar (Sansibar).*
- Frontiers.** The territory of the Sultan of Zanzibar consists of the islands *Zanzibar* and *Pemba*. None of the opposite mainland belongs to the Sultanate.
- Area.** Zanzibar, 1590 sq. km., 625 square miles; Pemba, 960 sq. km. 360 square miles.
- Population.** Zanzibar 150,000, Pemba 50,000 of which more than 100 are of European descent (50 English, 50 Germans and 7000 Indians).
- Possession.** British protectorate since the 1st July (4th November) 1890. Since the 31st August, 1896, known as the East Africa Protectorate.
- History.** In 1499 Vasco da Gama's fleet touched the island, which fell into the hands of the Portuguese in 1503. The African coast from Mombassa to Cape Corrientes, together with the islands, came under the rule of Portugal in 1529. 1698, Imâm of Maskat conquered the

territory, and drove the Portuguese South. 1823 and following years, British appeared in Zanzibar waters. 1856, the possessions of Imâm Sejjid Saïd of Maskat were divided between his two sons, and Sejjid Medshid acquired the African countries on the mainland, which had in the meantime been extended to the regions of Tanganyika and Nyanza, as an independent state. The *Governor General of India, Lord Canning, recognised the division in 1861*, but France not until the 10th March, 1862. At that time the coast of the African continent from Warsheik, 3° North Latitude, to Tunghi Bay, 10° 42' South Latitude, also belonged to Zanzibar. Germany's recognition 30th December, 1886. October 29th (1st November) 1886, the territory, which had in the meantime extended far into the interior, was divided in such a way that the coast land from Cape Delgado to Kipini on the Ozi River, 10 miles broad and stretching into the interior, was added to the Sultan's dominion. It was then decided that the German Empire should possess a Sphere of Interest in connection with the Zanzibar territory from the Rovuma River to the Umba River. North of Kipini, the Sultan retained several garrison towns, viz., Lamu, Kismayu, Brava, Merka, Maqdishu and Warsheik.

1885, August 14th, Recognition of the German Protectorate over Usagara, Nguru, Useguha and Ukami.

1888, May, the German East Africa Co. obtains, in consideration of the payment of 4 million marks, the right to administrate in Mrima, (the interior from Rovuma to the Umba). England (Imperial British East Africa Company), as early as the 24th of May, 1887, had acquired the right of administration of the land from the Umbi to Kipini for a yearly payment to the Sultan.

1889, August 31st, England obtained the island and Ports Lamu, Manda and Patta to the North of Tana.

1890, November 4th, British Protectorate of Zanzibar and cession to England of the territory from Umba to Juba, with Witu as British Sphere of Interest, Germany receiving Heligoland in exchange.

1892, August 26th (July 16th), Italy leases from the Sultan Warsheik, Maqdishu, Merka and Brava.

1893, July 31st, Sultan once more governs the territory between Tana and Juba.

1895, June 15th, Declaration of British Protectorate over all the country from the coast to Uganda; on the 30th June the British Imperial Government itself takes a firm footing there.

1896, August 25th, Sultan Sejjid Hamed bin Thwain bin Sa'id dies. Hamud bin Muhammed succeeds him.

1897, April 6th, Abolition of slavery, which was already prohibited in 1890.

**Government.** The present government of Zanzibar was formed in October, 1891, with Sir L. Mathews as "Prime Minister". All proclamations and agreements, etc., must be drawn up in the English and Arabian languages, and must first be submitted to the English Consul General for his consent. Since the 1st February, 1891, Zanzibar a free port. Chief town, *Zanzibar*, 30,000 inhabitants (often estimated at 100,000).

**Various.**

## German East Africa.

**Official title.** *Protectorate of the German Empire* (Schutzgebiete des deutschen Reiches): *German East Africa, Deutsch-Ostafrika.*

**Frontiers.** In the East, the Indian Ocean (the Mafia Island has also belonged to the Protectorate since the 1st December 1891), in the *South* (*Portuguese, German and English conventions of the 29th October [1st November] and 30th December 1886, 1st July 1890, and September 1894*), a straight line from Cape Delgado to the Rovuma, (the Kionga Bay is German), then along the course of this river to  $11\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  South Latitude, whence it passes direct to the East shore of the Nyassa Lake as far as Karonga, the track of the former

Stevenson road to Tanganyika (*Anglo-German Treaty 1st July 1890*), along the East shore of the basin of this lake to Usige on the North shore of the Tanganyika, and from here in a straight line as far as Mfumbiro (*Declaration of the Congo State's Administrator February 1885*), till it reaches the 1° North Latitude. Omitting the Mfumbiro, the North frontier follows the 1° North Latitude (*Convention between England and Germany 1st July 1890*) across the Victoria Nyanza as far as Kawirondo Bay, thence continuing its course in a straight line N. E. towards Kilima Ndsharo, which belongs to Germany, and so to the North bank at the mouth of the Umba. (*Treaties between England and Germany, 1st November, 1886 and 1st July, 1893*).

975,000 sq. km. or 310,000 square miles, which (according to Dr. Karl Peters) are divided into 220,000 sq. km. settlement land, 116,000 sq. km. uninhabited territory, and 66,000 sq. km. water.

Area.

The number of inhabitants is estimated at 3,850,000 (English estimates 2,100,000. 1896, about 1000 Europeans.

Population.

The most important provinces are Usambara, Usagara, Uhehe, Uniamwesi, Karagwe, Iramba, Konde, Kawende, Ruanda, Usukuma, further the Mafia island in the Indian Ocean and Ukerewe in the Victoria Nyanza.

Divisions.

A so-called Protectorate, but in reality a direct possession.

Possession.

Dr. Peters, Dr. Jühlke, and Count Joachim Pfeil landed in Saadani on the 4th November, 1884, and concluded, as representatives of the German Colonisation Society the first commercial treaty on the 19th November, having at the same time hoisted the German flag in M'buzimi.

History.  
Treaties.  
Frontier.  
Regulations.

1885, February 12th (3rd March), Formation of the German East Africa Company in Berlin by Dr. Carl Peters, who was furnished with an Imperial Privilege, etc., on the 27th February (Special treaties with the chiefs, 8th of April, 10th and 19th of June, 26th of

November, 29th of November, and 9th of December). 14th of August, German Protectorate recognised by the Sultan of Zanzibar.

1886, June, the German part of the territory in the Sultanate of Witu acquired by the Brothers Denhardt became the property of the German East Africa Company. — 29th October (1st November), Regulation of the North Frontier with England.

1887, March 27th, The rights of a body corporate granted to the German East Africa Company.

1888, Arab rebellion. — 16th August, the tract of coast from Wanga to Rovuma taken over. (*Convention with Zanzibar, 28th April, 1888*).

1889, October 22nd, Declaration of the German Protectorate over the coast from Witu to Kismayu, followed by claims from England. — 17th August of the same year, Baron Lambertmont's arbitration in reference to Lamu.

1890, March, Wissman appointed Imperial Governor.

1890, July 1st (17th June), *Treaty between Germany, England and the Sultan of Zanzibar*, determining the present frontiers of the possession. (Uganda comes under the British Sphere of Interest). — 27th October, The indemnity of 4 million Marks fixed. — 17th November, France gives her consent.

1896, Wissmann retires.

**Government.**

The Government is administrated by an Imperial Governor, who has his residence at *Dâr es salâm* (6000 inhabitants).

---

## British East Africa.

**Official title.**

*Imperial British East Africa* (usually abbreviated I. B. E. A.).

All the British possessions in East Africa excepting Zanzibar, Pemba and Uganda, bear since 1896 Aug. the name of the "East Africa Protectorate". The „Uganda Protectorate“ existe since 1896, July.

The Indian Ocean from the mouth of the Uмба to that of the Juba forms the *East frontier*. The boundary line proceeds along the Juba, the upper course of which is still unexplored, as far as the crossing of the 40° East Longitude of Greenwich and the 6° North Latitude, whence it follows the latter (*Anglo-Italian agreement 24th March and 15th April 1891*) to 35° Longitude East of Greenwich, and so to the Bahr el azraq or Blue Nile. The North frontier towards the Mähdi's dominion is not fixed; in general the 10° North Latitude may be taken as an approximative frontier. The South frontier is the North frontier of German East Africa (which see); the West frontier (see the East frontier of the Congo State), runs along the 30° Longitude East of Greenwich across the Albert Edward Lake and along the Semliki on the West of the Albert Lake through the Niam Niam lands to 10° North Latitude and South Dâr-Fûr.

2,600,000 sq. km. or one million square miles. Uganda alone contains 80,000 sq. km.

Roughly estimated, about five million inhabitants. Up to the present, the English have published no official census.

The I. B. E. A. possessions embrace Uganda, Usoga, Unioro, Ankori, Mpororo, Koki, a part of Ruanda; the Niam Niam countries, the former Egyptian Equatorial Province of Emin Pasha, also, according to some accounts, a part of Kordofan and Dâr-Fûr, Kawirondo, Massai, and a part of the Galla and Somali countries.

15th June 1895, British Protectorate declared over the whole country from the Indian Ocean to Uganda, including the former Sultanate of Witu.

The coast territory belongs, as already mentioned, to the Sultan of Zanzibar. 7th February 1824, Admiral Owen, who in the frigate "Leven" dropped anchor off Mombassa, declared Mombassa, the

Frontiers.

Area.

Population.

Divisions.

Possession.

History.  
Treaties.  
Frontier.  
Regulation.

island Pemba, and the coast from Melindi to Pangani under British Protection, on the strength of a convention with the Sultan of Zanzibar, and despite the presence of a fleet from Maskat. This act was not ratified, and the British flag was consequently lowered in Mombassa, the English officials left, and the country remained in the hands of Arabs from Maskat till 1856, when the Sultan of Zanzibar took possession.

1885, April 8th. Denhart Brothers received land from the Sultan of Witu, which they placed under a German Protectorate 27th of May.

1887, May 24th. The stretch of land from Wanga to Kipini handed over to the British East Africa Company.

1888, October 9th. Sultan of Zanzibar ceded the stretch of coast from Umba to Ozi to the Imperial British East Africa Company for fifty years.

1889, August 31st. The Sultan yields up all his possessions North of Kipini to the Company.

1890, July 1st. The British Sphere of Interest more definitely fixed by Germany and England. — 5th August, Recognition of the British Protectorate by France. — 19th November. British Protectorate over Witu, Kismaju, Patta, Manda.

1891. The company took over all the land from Umba to Juba (400 miles length of coast), from the Sultan for a yearly payment of 80,000 dollars, and at the same time the ports North of Kumayu were by the *Anglo-Italian convention of 24th March (16th July) 1893* leased by the Company to Italy.

1892, March 30th. Protectorate treaty with Uganda.

1893, End of March. The Company, which had occupied the whole territory as far as Uganda, the Albert Edward Lake, and Semliki River, retires from Uganda.

1893, July 31st. The Company gives up the administration of Witu.

1894, June 19th. British Protectorate declared over Uganda.

1895, June 15th. The whole of the lands of the I. B. E. A. placed under British protection, and the administration taken over by England on the 30th June, and placed under the control of the British Consul General at Zanzibar.

The Uganda province is under a commissioner, who is subordinate Government. to the British Agent and Commissioner at Zanzibar, who is also responsible for order along the coast for a distance of ten miles inland and for the maintenance of the communication between the coast and Uganda. — A railway 657 miles long is being built from Mombassa to the Victoria Nyanza. A road, 100 miles long, runs from Mombassa to Kibwezi.

The chief town of Uganda is — *Mengo* (seat of the British authorities: *Port Alice*). Seat of the government, *Mombassa*, 15,000 inhabitants.

---

## British Possession in Somaliland and Sokotra.

### *Somali Coast Protectorate.*

Official title.

The frontier line leaves the sea-coast West of Zejla on the Gulf of Aden at Cape Wahadu, and stretches southward across Lovadu (Lavada), Davali, Abasuên, and Biokabôba to Dshildessa. Here it turns towards the South-East to Milmil, then follows the 8° North Latitude Eastwards to the 48° Longitude East of Greenwich, whence it runs N. E. as far as Wadi Nogâl and from this valley directly North along the 49° Longitude East of Greenwich to the coast again, which it reaches at the seaport, Bender Ziada. (*Franco-English Agreement of 2nd of February 1888, and Anglo-Italian Convention of 5th of May 1894.*)

Frontiers.

77,000 sq. km. ; English estimates "about 75,000 square miles".

Area.

**Population.** Population: 240,000.

**Divisions.** The possession embraces the provinces of Ejssa (Isa), Gadaburssi, Habr Auál, Habr Gerhâdjii, Dolbohanta, Habr Toldshalej, War Singeli Somali.

**Possession.** Protectorate of Great Britain, which however resembles an actual possession, although some of the Somali chiefs receive subsidies from the British Government.

**History.** As early as 1827, England had established herself on the Somali coast from Aden and India, and in 1855 concluded conventions from Berbera with the most important Somali chiefs (Ugâses, Garâdes, Sultans).

1875. Occupation of the Somali coast by the Egyptians.

1884. Egyptians evacuate the districts. Since 1887, England has occupied the ports under the title of a protectorate.

1885. March; Ejssa, Gadaburssi and Habr Auál Somali under British Protectorate.

1888, *February 2nd. Regulation of the West frontier by a Franco-English Convention.*

1889, December 13th. Regulation of the Protectorate. (Somali Order in Council).

1894, May 5th. The frontiers determined by means of an *Anglo-Italian Agreement.*

**Government.** The territory is administered by the political agent of the governor of Aden, who is at the same time Consul for the Somali Coast. (Seat of the Vice Consul and British Agent, *Berbera*). In the winter 30,000 inhabitants, during the summer almost deserted.

**Varia.**

The Sokotra Archipelago embraces the *Islands Sokotra, Abd el Kury* and the *Brothers Islands* with an area of 3579 sq. km. (1382 square miles, including the area of Kuria Muria on the Arabian coast) and 10,000 inhabitants. The greater part of the archipelago was bought from the Sultan of Sokotra in 1875, and in accordance

with the rights of preemption, which were obtained by a treaty with the Sultan of Kashin in South Arabia, 1876, occupied by England 30th September, 1886, and administered from Aden. An agent and a small garrison are stationed at *Tamarida* on the North coast.

## French Possession on the Gulf of Aden.

*Côte Française des Somalis et dépendances* (formerly *Obock*.) Official title.

The Gulf of Aden starting from Raheita (Ras Dumejra 12° 30' North Latitude) via the Gubet el Kharab (Virgin's Water) as far as Cape Lovadu or Râs Ali (Wells of Hadu) 25 km. East of Râs Dshibuti (250 km.) forms the East frontier. The frontier then runs along the caravan tract from Dshibuti across Lovadu, Dauali, Abasuên to Bia Kabôba and Dshildessa. A West and South Sphere of Interest is considered as extending across the Somali and Afar (Danâkil) countries to the foot of the Abyssinian mountains. The courses of the Raheita River, the Hawash, and its tributary Addifuha, denote the direction of the North West frontier. *Anglo-French agreement, 2nd February, 1888.* Frontiers.

French estimates, 120,000 sq. km. but generally supposed to be only 10,000 sq. km. (3860 square miles); British estimation: 43,320 sq. m. Area.

Population 200,000 estimated officially 1890; 50,000 1897. (Somali and Afar or Danakil); probably much larger. Population.

The possession embraces Obock with its territories, to which belong the island of Dumejra, Dshezira Soba, Les Frères and the Musha Islands in Gubet el Kharâib; further Tadshura, Ambabo, Dullul, Sagallo, Dshibuti together with the Interior belonging to these points. Roads lead to Shoa and Harar. Divisions.

## Possession.

The points on the coast form the actual possession of France, and are all occupied, whereas the interior of the Afar Country can only be considered a Sphere of Interest. The territory was organised as a Colony by a decree of the 20th May, 1896.

History.  
Treaties.

1857. Henri Lambert appointed Consular Agent in Aden, associated himself with Aber Baker of Tadshura, who sold the stretch of land from Râs Ali and Uano to France for 10,000 thalers. Lambert was murdered on the 4th of June, 1859.

1861, January. Admiral Fleuriot de Langle installs Abu Baker as governor of Zejla.

1862, March 11th. France purchases Obock from Râs Dumejra to Râs Ali.

1872. Pierre Arnoux's treaty with Menelik of Shoa, by which the rights of the Negus are recognised.

1883, March 17th. Italy attempts to obtain the protectorate over Gubet Kharâib. France occupies Obock officially.

1884, October 18th. Tadshura becomes French by purchase.

1885, May 20th. French Protectorate over Tadshura, Ambabo Sagallo, and Gubet Kharâib, and annexation of these territories the same year. England cedes the Musha Islands to France.

1886, March 3rd. Obock becomes a penal colony for Arab prisoners.

1887. Division of Tadshura Bay between England and France.

1888, January and February. France occupies Râs Dshibuti and regulates the East frontier *by convention with England of the 2nd of February*.

1889, January 11th. Landing of the Russians in Sagallo under Atschinoff (175 men, 6 priests). 18th February, Bombardment of Sagallo.

1896, May 20th. Organisation of the Colony, and removal of the governmental residence from Obock to Râs Dshibuti.

A governor is responsible for the administration. Chief town **Government.** and port, *Râs Dshibuti*, 3000 inhabitants.

## Italian Possession in North East Africa.

For the single territories — *Possedimenti, protettorati Italiani* **Official title.** *in Africa* — there exist different official names: *Eritrea, Assab, Costa dei Benâdir, Somalia Italiana.*

In consequence of the defeat of the Italians on the 1st March **Frontiers.** 1896, at Adua, their possession in Africa is at present undergoing a political change. Omitting Abyssinia, which would never submit to an Italian protectorate as provided by the treaty of Utshali 2nd May 1889, the boundary lines may be defined as follows. They begin at Ras Kasâr, 18° 2' North Latitude, and on the Falkât River, according to the *Anglo-Italian treaty of May 1887*, (Italian Green Book laid before the Italian Chamber 25th April 1888), run in a straight line to the right bank of the Barka, follow it in the direction of Kassala, which the Italians took and occupied in 1894, thence probably following the Lareb Eastward. Before the war of 1895—1896, the line extended (*Anglo-Italian treaties 24th March and 15th April, 1891*, ratified on the 25th February 1890) from Chor Gash South-westerly towards the Atbara, followed this and the Semsen and Rahat to 35½° Longitude East of Greenwich and to the 6th Parallel Northern Latitude. Proceeding along this Parallel to 40° Longitude East of Greenwich, it then followed the undefined course of the Juba to its outlet into the Indian Ocean. The course of the Mareb may in future form the South frontier of the Italian possession adjoining Abyssinia.

Towards the South-East of Ras Kasâr, 18° 2' North Latitude, the coast of the Red Sea borders the Italian possession as far as

Raheita 12° 30' North Latitude. The ocean frontier starts again near Bender Ziada in the Somali country, bends round Cape Guardafui, and ends at the mouth of the Juba. As the French possession on the Gulf of Aden has no fixed frontiers in the West and East, and on the other hand Menelik II of Ethiopia declared himself sovereign of the whole of the African East Horn in 1885, only the *Anglo-Italian Agreements of the 21th March and 15th April, 1891, the 5th and 25th May, 1894*, concerning the demarcation of British Somali Country, the Italian Sphere of Interest as well as the Somali Italiana, can be authoritative.

**Divisions.**

The Italian possession embraces Massowah with its territory, the Dahlak Archipelago, the protectorate over Habab, Marea, and Benî Amêr, the protectorate over Aussa and the Danâkil coast, as well as all the Afâr races depending on Aussa, Assab, the Raheita protectorate, and that over East and South Somali country (the races of Midshurtin near Obbia, Merihan, Ogadên, Hawiya Rahanwin) and the Gallaland as far as Dshub (Juba) thus, principally the Arussi-Galla land. For the present it is impossible to give an exact description of the Italian Dominion on the African East Horn, as the extent of the actual Abyssinian government there is unknown. Abyssinian outposts are stationed near Bia kabôka in the Gadaburssi Somaliland, and in the Marar Prairie (towards Ogadên), and Abyssinian bands raise tribute far into Ogadên, having in 1895 also ransacked Bardera on the Juba river.

**Area.**

145,000 sq. km. (487,000 square miles), according to Italian statements 247,300 sq. km.; with the area of the Somali and Gallalands 775,000 sq. km., including Abyssinia and Shoa, 1,676,000 square miles.

**Population.**

The population was estimated in 1893, according to the state of affairs then prevailing, and was set down as 150,000 for the occupied territories; but when the whole area is taken into con-

sideration, it would certainly amount to more than two millions, Abyssinia and dependencies always excepted.

Massowah and the Interior, also Assab, direct possession (possedimento). The protectorate is formed by Habab, Mareâ, Benî Amer, Aussa, the Danâkil coast, and Raheita, also the Somali territories. The Gallalands can only be taken as Sphere of Interest. Possession.

The coast was visited by the Portuguese in the 15th Century. History.

1520, Diego Lopez landed in Massowah. Treaties.

1557, Turks took Massowah, installing a Habab chief as governor with the title of Naib. Frontier.  
Regulation.

1866, Turks formally cede Massowah to Egypt.

1870, The Rubattino Company purchase Assab, and surrender it in 1879 to the Italian Government. Egyptian protest 1st July 1870.

1874, Khedive Ismail Pasha occupies Keren and marches on Tigré.

1882, July 5th. Law concerning the organisation and recognition of Assab as a colony. Occupied on the 9th January 1881.

1884, Taking of Kassala. Raheita under Italian Protectorate.

1885, February 6th. The Italians under San Marzano occupy Massowah.

1885, June. Italian protectorate over the Danâkil coasts, 2 December. Civil administration in Massowah.

1887, January 26th. Defeat of the Italians at Dogali.

1887, July 5th, *General Saletta's protectorate treaty* with Kantibai concerning Habab.

1888. Conclusion of the protectorate treaty with Berehan, Sultan of Raheita, and acceptance of the protectorate by the Marea, (January).

1888, December, 2nd. General Baldissera's *Protectorate treaty* with Deglel concerning the Benî Amér.

1888, December, 6th. *Treaty with the Sultan of Aussa* respecting the *protectorate* (ratified 13th November, 1889).

1889, February, 8th, (16th May). The Sultan of Obbia places himself under the Italian protectorate. In April and November the protectorate was extended, by a treaty with the Midshurtin Sultan, to the territory between 5° 33' and 8° 13' North Latitude. 12th July, Occupation of Asmara. 29th September, Frontier Regulation with Abyssinia.

1889, May 2nd. (25th Miazza 1881) *Treaty of Utshali*, by which the Abyssinians bind themselves to accept the intervention of Italy in foreign affairs (ratified 29th September, 1889, Italian Green Book 4th March 1890). This treaty was never recognised by Abyssinia (Paragraph 17, *Amharish*: "*itshallautshal*", "*pourra*" or "*devra*"). — May 20th, Occupation of Keren.

1890, January 1st. Incorporation of the Assab colony with Eritrea. — 14th January. The Italians enter Adua.

1892, August 26th. The Sultan of Zanzibar cedes the coast of Obbia as far as Juba by lease to the Italians. Italian administration instituted September, 1893.

1893, July 16th. Italian Government hands over the administration of the Benadir ports (Merka, Brava, Maqdishu, Warsheik, Itala) for 3 years to Messrs. S. Filonardi and Co., who pay 160,000 rupees annually to the Sultan.

1896, March 1th. Battle of Abba Garima.

1896, June 25th. Formation of the "*Società anonima commerciale Italiana nei Benadir*". (Somalia Italiana.)

1897, January 7th. Publication of the terms of peace with Italy.

Government  
Varia.

A Governor superintends the administration of Eritrea, assisted by Royal Commissioners.

Seat of Government, *Massowah*, 16,000 inhabitants (1891).

## Abyssinia.

*Itjopja, El Hábasha, Abessinien, Abyssinia, Abyssinie, Abissinia, Etiopia.* **Official title.**

Abyssinia borders in the *North* on Eritrea, in the *East* on the Italian and French Danákil and Somaliland, the territory of the Italian Sphere of Interest; in the *South* on the protectorate of the I. B. E. A.; in the *West* on the countries of the I. B. E. A. and the Mahdi's Empire. An exact topographical limitation is not possible. So much may be said, however that Abyssinia has no sea-port.

**Frontiers.  
Divisions.**

The country is formed of provinces and the partial Kingdoms of Tigré, Amhara, Godsham, Shoa, Harar, and the Galla territory, on the left bank of the Abaj (upper course of the Blue Nile), Gudru, Djimma etc., then of Kaffa, Wallamo, and the Sidâma territories, and extends with the South frontier to the vicinity of the Rudolf and Stefanie Lakes, in the South East as far as the Erer and Webi Shebéli. The provinces governed by "ras" are: Semien, Dembea, Tigrè, Sakota, Begemeder, Yetzoo, Aroossi, Gooragê, Marocco, Galla to the west of Kaffa, Harar, and Tchertcher.

About 500,000 sq. km. (The Abyssians give 2,500,000.)

**Area.**

Population: 4½ millions. (The Abyssinians give 15,000,000.)

**Population.**

Absolute barbaro-tyrannical country under the rule of Negûsa Neghest ("King of Kings"), or Ati, at present Menelik II of Shoa, whose vassals are the monarchs of Tigré, Godsham, Galla lands, and Harar. Italy claimed in vain, on the strength of the *treaty of Utshali 2nd May* (1st October) 1889, the right of protection over Abyssinia. The latter never recognised the right but on the other hand frequently protested against it to the European Powers.

**Possession.**

History.  
Treaties.

An ancient Semitic empire originally consisting of five large independent territories, whose inhabitants are monophisitic Christians, with kings elected from amongst themselves as Negûsa Neghest. Once governed in the North by Byzantines. 1520, visited by the Portuguese, when they had already a considerable history. It is probable that the empire extended over the whole African East Horn. Abyssinia's Mohammedan rival in the East, the Adel Empire (later Harar) arose about 1300 A. D. and flourished about 1500.

1534, Invasion of the Galla into the Ethiopian Empire and settlement there.

1536 to 1543, Wars of Muhammed Granj, monarch of Adel against Abyssinia; the Portuguese under Christoforo da Gama in Abyssinia.

1538—1539, Turks support the enemies of Abyssinia with an army.

1680—1704, Invasion of the Galla in Central Amhâra.

1743—1807, Taking of the Galla territory by the Abyssinians.

1766—1858, Civil war in the Sidâma countries in the South of Shoa.

1805 and following years, Lord Valentia, 1809 Salt, visit Abyssinia with presents from Britain.

1843, June 7th, *Conclusion of a trade and friendly treaty by Rochert d'Héricourt in the name of King Louis Philippe*, between France and Abyssinia. This treaty is still in force.

1846, Harris' British expedition to Shoa.

1854—1855, Extinction of the ruling dynasties of Djimma, Kâha, and Ennerea.

1858, Commencement of the Galla war of Nêgusa Neghest Theodoro.

1864—1896, Subjection of the Galla by Ras Govanná and Ras Darghié.

1867—1868, English campaign, and taking of Magdala.

1874, Egyptian war against Abyssinia. The Egyptians routed at Gura.

1880, German mission to Abyssinia under Gerhard Rohlfs.

1884, June 3rd, Treaty of Adua between Abyssinia, England, and Egypt. Negus retains the sovereignty over Bogos.

1885, February 25th, Landing of Italians in Massowah. — 26th May, Harar deserted by the Egyptians.

1886, January, Taking of Harar by the Shoans. Menelik II declares himself sovereign of the whole African East Horn.

1887, Defeat of the Italians near Dogali.

1889, January 18th. A Russian expedition under Atshinoff attempts to advance upon Abyssinia across Obock. Atshinoff plants the Russian flag at Sagallo, but the French admiral Olry bombards the fortress, and carries off the Russians as prisoners to Obock.

1889, May 2nd, *Protectorate treaty at Utshali with Italy* (ratified 29th September in Rome), extended in October to mutual protection.

1889, May, Campaign against the Mahdi's followers and 10th March, death of Negusa Neghest John II. — Menelik II of Shoa became Negusa Neghest of Ethiopia. — 29th September, (additional clause, 1st October) Frontier regulation with Italy, by which the Negus recognises Italy's possessory rights.

1889, October 22nd, Coronation of Menelik at Antotto.

1890, British mission to Abyssinia under Sir G. H. Portal.

1890—1894, Second Journey of the Russian Cossack officer Mashkoff to Harar and to Menelik II.

1891, February 11th, Protest against the Utshali treaty.

1895—1896, War between Abyssinia and Italy.

1895, Russian expedition under Leontjeff to Abyssinia, and despatch of an Abyssinian legation to Moscow and St. Petersburg.

1896, Summer, Deputation of Pope Leo XIII to Menelik II with reference to the liberation of the Italian prisoners.

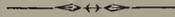
1896, October 26th, Treaty of Peace with Italy. Abolition of the Utshali treaty and recognition of Abyssinia's independence. After the expiration of a year, frontier regulation to follow.

Government.  
Varia.

1897, January 27th, Conclusion of Franco-Abyssinian trade convention at Harar. British mission under Rennell Rodd to Menelik II.

The Negusa Neghest governs the extensive Empire through Ras or Governors of the provinces, and Shum or District Administrators. Imperial residence, *Addis ababá* in Shoa. 50,000 inhabitants.

Although the exact position of the European Powers is not quite clear, the Negusa Neghest is better disposed towards France, which has obtained a firm footing from Dshibuti in Harar and Shoa. The old convention (*Alliance et commerce*) of the 7th June, 1843, concluded by d'Hericourt with Menelik's grandfather, Sahla Selassié of Shoa, stands France in good stead. Abyssinia is the only part of Africa in which Russia has recently had any direct and considerable political influence — an influence which many have wrongly attributed to the alleged resemblance of the Russian-Oriental to the Ethiopian creed. These religious propagandas reach far back into the past. The Abyssinian statesmen display towards England a reserve almost amounting to timidity. Abyssinia is completely cut off from the sea-coast.



# Literature.

## Egypt.

Parliamentary Papers 1832, Nr. 18; 1835, Nr. 11; 1836, Nr. 1 — Bluebook C 5668. — *Jolowicz*, Bibliotheca Aegyptiaca (Leipzig 1858, Supplement 1861). — *Kremer von, A.*, Aegypten (Leipzig 1863). — *Ronchetti*, L'Égypte et ses progrès sous Ismail Pacha (Marseille 1867). — *Lane*, An account of the manners and customs of the modern Egyptians (London 1871, 5th edition). — *Stephan*, Das heutige Aegypten (Leipzig 1872). — *Wyse*, Egypt political, financial, strategical (London 1882). — *Amici*, L'Égypte ancienne et moderne (Alexandrie 1884). — *Prince Ibrahim Hilmy*, The Literature of Egypt and the Soudan from the earliest times to the year 1885 (London 1886). — *Plauchut*, L'Égypte et sa occupation anglaise (Paris 1889). — Revue française 1891, pag. 372. — Britain's work in Egypt (Edinburg 1892). — *Russel H.*, The Soudan, cause, effect and remedy (London 1892). — *Scott Keltie J.*, Statesman's Yearbook, 1892, page 1054 etc. — *Duc d'Harcourt*, L'Égypte et les Égyptiens (Paris 1893). — *Neumann Th.*, Das moderne Aegypten (Leipzig 1893). — *Fircks A., Freiherr von*, Aegypten 1894 (Berlin 1895 und 1896, 2 Bde.). — Revue diplomatique et coloniale (Paris 1894 seqq.). — *Hron K.*, Aegypten und die ägyptische Frage (Leipzig 1895). — *Alis H.*, Promenade en Égypte (Paris 1895). — *Pensa H.*, L'Égypte et le Soudan Égyptien (Paris 1895). — *Hertslat E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896, 3 Vols) I, pp. 259—262; III, 1072—1074.

## The Mahdi's Dominion.

*Colborn*, With Hicks Pasha in the Soudan (London 1885). — *Royle*, The Egyptian campaigns 1882—1885 (London 1886, 2 Vols.). — *Wilson C. T. and Felkin R. W.*, Uganda and the Egyptian Soudan (London 1887, 2 Vols.). — *Buchta, R.*, Der Sudan (Leipzig 1888). — *Emin Pascha*, Eine Sammlung von Reisebriefen und Berichten Dr. Emin Pascha's (Leipzig 1888. English: London 1888). — *Wingate F. R.*, Mahdiism and the Egyptian Soudan (London 1891). — *Gessi R.*, Sette anni nel Sudan egiziano (Milano 1891). — *Russel H.*, The Soudan, cause, effect and remedy (London 1892). — *Chaillé-Long Bey*, L'Égypte et ses provinces perdues (Paris 1892). — *Ohrvalder J.*, Aufstand und Reich des Mahdi im Sudan (Innsbruck 1892. English: London 1892). — *Vita Hassan*, Die Wahrheit über Emin Pascha, die ägyptische Aequatorialprovinz und den Sudan (Berlin 1893, 2 Bde.). — *Statin Pascha R.*, Feuer und Schwert im Sudan (Leipzig 1896; English: London 1896). — I. R. United Service, I, 41 (1897): 65—79: The Dongola Expedition of 1896. — *Atteridge A. H.*, Towards Khartoum. The story of the Soudan war of 1896 (London 1897).

## Tripoli.

*Maltzan, Freiherr von*, Reise in den Regentschaften Tunis und Tripolis (Leipzig 1870, 3 Bde.). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1887, pag. 28. — *Borsari F.*, Geografia e storica etnologica della Tripolitania e Fezzan etc. (Napoli 1888). — *Nachtigal G.*, Sahara und Sudan (Berlin 1879, 1881, 1889 3 Vols.). — *Rohlf's G.*, Kufra (Leipzig 1881). — *Robecchi-Bricchetti L.*, Tripolitania (Roma 1896).

## Tunis.

*Dilhan*, Histoire abrégée de la régence de Tunisie (Paris 1866). — *Desfossés*, La Tunisie (Paris 1877). — Journal Officiel de la République Française, 27 et 28 Mai 1881. — *Behm-Wagner*, Bevölkerung der Erde (Gotha 1882, pag. 50 f.). — Le Journal Officiel de Tunis. — *Playfair R.*, Handbook for Algeria and Tunis (London 1887). — El Râid el Tunisien. — *Petermann's Mittheilungen*, 1887, pag. 28. — *Rivière A.*, La Tunisie (Paris 1887). — *Mayer*, Cahier coloniaux, 1889, pag. 385. — *Ashbee H. S.*, A bibliography of Tunisia from the earliest times to the end of 1888 (London 1889). — *Lallemand C.*, La Tunisie, pays de protectorat français (Paris 1891). — *P. H. X.*, La politique française en Tunisie (Paris 1891). — *Fitzner R.*, Die Regenschaft Tunis (Berlin 1895). — *Clarin de la Rive*, Histoire générale de la Tunisie (Paris 1895). — *Planet E.*, Correspondance des beys de Tunisie et des consuls de France avec la cour 1577—1830 (Paris 1893—1895). — Livre Jaune (Traité Tunisiens) 1896. — Renseignements coloniaux et documents publiés par le comité de l'Afrique Française N. 1. Le règlement Italo-Tunisiens etc.; N<sup>o</sup> 6. — La Tunisie, I. Histoire et description (Paris 1896, 2 Vols). — L'Afrique Française 1896, pp. 46, 83. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 548—553, 906—915.

## Algiers.

*Grammont*, Histoire d'Alger sous la domination turque 1815—1830 (Paris 1857). — *Nettement*, Histoire de la conquête d'Alger (Paris 1869). — Bulletin Officiel du Gouvernement général de l'Algérie 1873 seqq. — Journal Officiel de l'Algérie. — Annuaire général de l'Algérie. — *Sautayra*, Législation de l'Algérie (Paris 1878). — *Idem*, Relation entre la France et la régence d'Alger au 17<sup>me</sup> siècle (Paris 1882). — *Gaffarel P.*, L'Algérie (Paris 1883). — *Playfair R. L.*, Handbook of Algeria and Tunis (London 1887). — *Roussel*, L'Algérie de 1830 à 1840 (Paris 1887, 2 Vols.). — *Le Roy-Beaulieu*, L'Algérie et la Tunisie (Paris 1887). — *Amat*, Le M'zab et les M'zabites (Paris 1888). — *Playfair R. L.*, A bibliography of Algeria (London 1888). — *Roussel C.*, La conquête de l'Algérie (1841—1857) (Paris 1889, 2 Vols.). — *Robin*, Le M'zab et son annexion à la France (Alger 1889). — *Idem*, Bibliography of the Barbary States (London 1889). — *Mercier E.*, Histoire de l'Afrique septentrionale (Paris 1890 3 Vols.). — *Choisy M. A.*, Documents relatifs à la mission dirigée au sud de l'Algérie (Paris 1890). — *Deporter*, La question du Touat etc. (Paris 1891). — *Alis H.*, La conquête du Tchad (Paris 1891). — *Ferry J.*, Le gouvernement de l'Algérie (Paris 1892). — *Vignon L.*, La France en Algérie (Paris 1893). — *Vuillot P.*, L'Exploration du Sahara. Étude historique et géographique (Paris 1895). — *Malher Col.*, La question du Touat (Paris 1895). — *Vivarez M.*, Au sujet du Touat (Alger 1896). — *Goguyer A.*, Occupation de l'arrière-terre du Maghreb (Paris 1896). — Journal Officiel, 1 Janvier 1897. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 287—297. — *Foureau F.* Au Sahara (Paris 1897).

## Morocco.

*Bernard*, Quatre mois dans le Sahara (Paris 1881). — *Ereckmann*, Le Maroc moderne (Paris 1885). — *Jannasch*, Die deutsche Handelsexpedition in Marokko (Berlin 1886). — *Stutfield*, El Moghreb (London 1886). — *De la Martinière E.*, Bibliographie du Maroc, 1844—1886 (Revue de géographie 1886, Août). — *Foucauld Ch. de*, Reconnaissance au Maroc 1883—1884 (Paris 1888). — *Idem*, Morocco (London 1889). — *Cora*, Cosmos, IX, pag. 73. — *Thomson J.*, Travels in the Atlas and Southern Morocco (London 1889). — Blackwood's Magazine, 1889, page 412. — *Leared A.*, Morocco and the Moors (London 1891). — *Bonsal S.*, Morocco as it is (London 1893). — *Diercks G.*, Marokko und die deutschen Interessen (Berlin 1893). — *Wolfrom G.*, Le Maroc (Paris 1893). — *Picard E.*, El Moghreb al Aksa, une mission Belge au Maroc (Bruxelles 1893). — *Diercks G.*, Meine

Materialien zur Kenntniss und Beurtheilung des Scherifenreiches und der Marokko-Frage (Berlin 1894). — *Merry e Colom Fr.*, Mi embajada extraordinaria á Marruecos en 1863 (Madrid 1894) — Libro rojo 1894. — *Cañizares y Moyano E.*, Apuntes sobre Marruecos (Madrid 1895). — *Harris W. B.*, Tafilet (London 1895). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 802—809, 894—902, 1062—1066.

### Spanish Possessions (Presidios, Canaries, Gaboon, Islands in the Guinea Gulf).

*Chil y Naranjo G.*, Estudios historicos ... de las Islas Canarias (Palmas d. g. C. 1876 et 1880). — *Sorela A.*, Les possessions espagnoles en Afrique (Paris 1885). — Gaceta de Madrid 1885 seqq. — Diplomatic and Consular Reports from Spain and her Colonies (London 1891). — Revista geographica commercial 1886, Nr. 25. — *Iradier M.*, Africa (Victoria 1887, 2 Vols.). — *Baumann O.*, Fernando Póo (Wien 1888). — Boletim da Sociedad de Geographia (Madrid 1888, pag. 157). — Bulletin Société de Géographie commerciale (Paris 1888, Nr. 7). — *Coello F.*, La cuestión del Rio Muni (Madrid 1889). — Boletim da Sociedad de Geographia (Madrid 1890, pag. 7). — *Verneau R.*, Cinq années de séjour aux îles Canaries (Paris 1890). — *Reparaz G.*, España en Africa (Madrid 1891). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 170). — *Reparaz G.*, Melilla. Nociones de politica hispano-marroqui (Madrid 1893). — *Millares A.*, Historia general de las Canarias (Las Palmas 1893). — Bulletin des lois de la République Française Nr. 888. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 882—902.

### Rio d'oro.

Boletim da Sociedad de Geographia (Madrid 1885, pag. 333). — Globus, 1885, 18 und 21. — *Gimenez S.*, España en el Africa Septentrional (Madrid 1885). — Revista geographica commercial I. (1885—1886, page 11; II. 1886—1887, pp. 53, 100, 250). — Boletim da Sociedad de Geographia (Madrid 1895, pag. 191, 1886, pag. 1). — *Pérez del Toro F.* España en el Nordeste de Africa (Madrid 1886 et 1892). — *Bonelli*, El Sahara (Madrid 1887). — Gaceta official, 6. Abril 1887. — Blackwood's Magazine, 1889, pag. 412. — Bulletin Société de Géographie (Paris 1889, pag. 180). — Revue Française, 1891, pag. 429. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 886, 887.

### Madeira, Azors, Cap Verde Islands.

*Morclet*, Iles Açores (Paris 1860). — *Schultze*, Die Insel Madeira (Stuttgart 1864). — *Doelter C.*, Die Vulkane der Capverdischen Inseln und ihre Producte (Leipzig 1881). — *Brown A. S.*, Madeira and the Canary Islands (London 1891).

### Senegambia.

Journal Officiel, 18 Octobre 1882, 20 Juillet, 28 Octobre 1890, Février, 16 Mars 1891, 14 et 27 Avril 1891. — Annales Sénégalaises de 1854 à 1885, suivies des traités passés avec les indigènes (Paris 1885). — Annuaire du Sénégal 1888 seqq. — *Le Brun Rénaud*, Les possessions françaises de l'Afrique occidentale (Paris 1885). — *Ancelle*, Les explorations au Sénégal (Paris 1887). — Economiste français, 21 Janvier et 21 Juin 1888. — *Faidherbe*, Le Sénégal (Paris 1889). — Bulletin Société de Géographie (Paris 1889, pag. 180). — Idem Bordeaux, 1889, page 614. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII, pag. 161. — Revue française 1800, pp. 308 et 488; 1891, pag. 112. — *Du Sorbier de la Tourasse J.*, Au pays de Woloffs. Souvenir d'un traitant du Sénégal (Tours 1897). — *Donnet G.*, Une mission au Sahara occidental (Paris 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 539, 540.

## French Soudan, Guinea, Ivory Coast.

Bluebook, C 5905. — Journal Officiel, 28 Mars 1883. — *Gallieni*, Voyage au Soudan français (Paris 1885). — *Faidherbe*, Le Soudan français (Lille 1886). — *Faidherbe*, Le Sénégal. La France dans l'Afrique occidentale (Paris 1889). — *Péroz E.*, Au Soudan français (Paris 1889). — *Mayer*, Cahiers coloniaux, pag. 118. — Revue française, 1889, pag. 705. — Les Colonies françaises (Paris 1890, Vols. V et VI, pp. 160—230). — Procès-verbaux et rapports du Congrès colonial national (Paris 1890). — *Gaffarel P.*, Le Sénégal et le Soudan français (Paris 1890). — Revue géographique, 1890, pag. 216. — La Mellacorée et la colonie de Sierra Leone (Paris 1890). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1891, pag. 165). — Journal Officiel, 4 et 17 Août 1891. — Renseignements sur la situation des Colonies Nr. 35—38 (Paris 1891). — *Armand Ste.*, Note sur les établissements Français de la Côte d'or (Paris 1891). — *Binger*, Cap., Du Niger au golfe de Guinée par le pays de Kong et le Mossi (Paris 1891, 2 Vols.). — *Idem*, Deux campagnes au Soudan français (Paris 1891). — Parliamentary Papers 1892, Nr. 7. — *Sanderval de, O.*, Soudan français (Paris 1893). — *Rauçon A.*, Le Bondou. Étude de géographie et d'histoire Soudaniennes de 1681 à nos jours (Bordeaux 1894). — *Péroz*, Commandant, Récit de campagne 1891 et 1892 (Paris 1895). — Le Journal Officiel de l'Afrique occidentale Française. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 582—587, 589—591.

## British Possessions in West Africa.

Parliamentary Papers 1865—1869. — Bluebook, C 670, C 4642, C 4957, C 5357, C 5373, C 5905, C 6354, and Reports of the Colonial office. — Papers relating H. M. colonial possessions (London 1872, seqq.). — London Gazette, 1875. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger vom 30. Januar 1875 und 4. December 1888. — *Griffith*, Sierra Leone, past, present and future (London 1881). — Journal Officiel, 28 Mars 1883. — *Banbury G. A.*, Sierra Leone (London 1888). — London Gazette, 15th January 1886 and 4th December 1888. — La Mellacorée et la colonie de Sierra Leone (Paris 1890). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 1890, 15. Juli. — Journal Officiel, 17 Août 1891. — *Ingham E.*, Sierra Leone after a hundred years (London 1894). — Colonial reports Nr. 185 and 189. — La main-d'œuvre aux colonies. Documents Officiels. Bruxelles 1897 (Institut coloniale internationale). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 365—384, 388—402, 405—432 484—530; II, pp. 554—567, 575—581, 589—591, 596—604, 674—679; III, pp. 1048—1058,

## Liberia.

Parliamentary Papers 1892, Nr. 107. — United States' foreign Relations, 1879 seqq. — *Wauvermans H.*, Libéria. Histoire de la fondation d'un État Nigre Libre (Bruxelles 1885). — *Mc Cants Stewart T.*, Liberia (New-York 1886). — *Baurzeix P.*, La République de Libéria (Paris 1887). — *Dutry*, Libéria, son histoire, sa constitution et ses ressources (Gand 1887). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1888, pag. 248. — *Büttikofer J.*, Liberia (Amsterdam 1890, 2 Bde.). — *Mc Pherson J. H. T.*, History of Liberia (Baltimore 1891). — *Cook O. Fr.*, Third Report to the Board of Managers of the New-York State Colonisation Society. (New York 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 575—581, 777—786.

## Togoland.

*Zöller H.*, Das Togoland (Stuttgart 1885). — Kölnische Zeitung vom 25. April 1887 — Deutsche Weißbücher 1884 ff. (1. Februar 1886). — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger 1884 ff. — *Danckelmann, Freiherr von*, Mittheilungen aus den deutschen Schutzgebieten (1888 ff.). — Deutsche Kolonialzeitung 1888 ff. besonders 10. Juli 1890. — Deutsches Kolonialblatt 1889 ff. — Petermann's Mittheilungen, 1890 pag. 194; 1897, pag. 270 f.

## Dahomey.

Bluebook, C 5905. — *Burton R.*, Mission to Gelele king of Dahomey (London 1864, 2 Vols.). — Les Colonies françaises (Paris, Vol. VI). — *Albéca, A. L.*, Les établissements français du golfe de Benin (Paris 1839). — Nineteenth Century, 1890, October. — Revue française, 1890, pag. 694. — *Nicolas W.*, L'Expédition du Dahomey en 1890 (Paris 1892). — *Barbou*, Histoire de la guerre au Dahomey (Paris 1893). — *Dalzel*, The history of Dahomey (London 1893). — Journal Officiel, 22 Juin 1894. — *Aublet E.*, La guerre au Dahomey (Paris 1894, 2 Vols.). — *Decoeur*, Bulletin du Comité de l'Afrique française, 1895, Nr. 7. — *Foà E.*, Le Dahomey (Paris 1895). — *d'Albéca A. L.*, La France au Dahomey (Paris 1895). — *Toutée*, Dahomé, Niger, Touareg (Paris 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896, 3 Vols.), I, pp. 247—257; III, page 998. — Reichsanzeiger, 19. October 1897. — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 27. October 1897.

## Cameroon.

Bluebook 1880, (Slave Trade) Nr. 4. — Deutsche Weißbücher 1884 ff. — Bulletin des lois de la République Française Nr. 888 (Paris 1885). — *Reichenow*, Die deutsche Kolonie Kamerun (Berlin 1885). — National-Zeitung, 15. Februar 1885. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 20. Juni 1885, August 1886, 10. Juli 1890. — Correspondence respecting affairs in the Cameroons (London 1885). — *Danckelmann, Freiherr von*, Mittheilungen aus den deutschen Schutzgebieten (Berlin 1888 seqq.). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 1388 ff. (besonders 1894, Nr. 8). — Journal Officiel, 14 Août 1894. — Deutsche Kolonialzeitung, 1889 ff. — *Morgen C.*, Durch Kamerun von Süd nach Nord (Leipzig 1893). — *Passarge S.*, Adamana (Berlin 1895). — *Koschitzky*, Deutsche Kolonialgeschichte (2 Bde.). — *Zintgraff E.*, Nord-Kamerun (Berlin 1895). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 596—604, 612—614, 658—662; III, pp. 999—1003, 1048—1058.

## French Congo.

Parliamentary Papers 1895, Nr. 5. — Bluebook, C 4279. — Bulletin des lois de la République Française Nr. 888 (7 Février 1885). — Journal Officiel, Février 1885, 28 Avril 1886, 3 Mai 1891. — Compte rendu des séances de la Société de Géographie de Paris 1885—1896. — La Gazette géographique 1886, pag. 410. — *Iradier M.*, Africa (Victoria 1887, 2 Vols.). — Bulletin Société de Géographie commerciale (Paris 1888, Nr. 7). — *Santos e Silva J. E. de*, Esboço historico do Congo e Loango nos tempos modernos (Lisboa 1888). — *Guiral-Kinckel d'Herculais*, Le Congo Français (Paris 1889). — Les Colonies françaises (Paris 1890, Vol. VI, pp. 1—60). — Procès-verbaux et rapports du Congrès colonial national (Paris 1890). — Revue française, 1891, pag. 929. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 170 ff.). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 1894, Nr. 8. — Journal Officiel, 14 Août 1894. — Mouvement géographique 1894, pag. 72; 1891, pag. 60; 1888, pp. 62, 242. — Documents parlementaires 1894, 28. Mai, pp. 843—856. — Revue générale. Août 1804. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 98, 99, 207—215, 298; III, pp. 999, 1059.

## The Congo State.

Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 4, 5, 15. — Bluebook, C 7360, C 3885. — Bulletin Officiel de l'État Indépendant du Congo 1887, pag. 49. — *Wauters A. J.*, Les Belges au Congo (Bruxelles 1884). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1885 pag. 136 ff. — *Faure Ch.*, La conférence africaine de Berlin (Genève 1885). — Documents diplomatiques. Affaires du Congo 1884—1887. — *Stanley H. M.*, The Congo and the founding of its Free State (London 1885), II, pp. 378—458. — Le Mouvement géographique 1885—1896 (1888, pag. 62; 1890, pp. 78 et 91. 1891, pag. 60; 1894, Nr. 8, pp. 29, 32, 71, 74 et 95; 1895, pp. 26—38,

49). — *Moynier G.*, La Fondation de l'État Indépendant du Congo au point de vue juridique (Paris 1887). — *Banning*, Le partage politique de l'Afrique (1888). — *Du Fief*, Bulletin Société Belge de géographie 1890, pp. 377—467. — Documents diplomatiques 2. Sér., 1884, Vol. XII. — Bulletin, Officiel, 1888, pag. 240; 1891, pag. 213; 1894, pag. 22. — Berlin Act, 26th February 1885. — Brussels Act 2nd July 1890. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pp. 173—178). — Le Congo illustré, 1893 seqq. — Livre jaune 1895. — Revue des Deux Mondes, 1895, pp. 477, 953 — *Droogmans H.*, Le Congo (Bruxelles 1895). — *Chapaux A.*, Le Congo historique, diplomatique, physique, politique etc. (Bruxelles 1894). — *Frederichs J.*, Manuel de géographie de l'État Indépendant du Congo (Bruxelles 1895). — *Wauters A. J.*, Bibliographie du Congo 1880—1895 (Bruxelles 1895), pp. 21—36, 304—309. — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 83. — *Hinde S. L.*, The Fall of the Congo Arabs (London 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 48—106, 191—246; III, pp. 1008—1015, 1017, 1021, 1022, 1041—1047, 1059—1061.

### British Islands in the Atlantic Ocean. Walfish Bay.

Colonial Office List Nr. 275. — *Melliss*, St. Helena a physical, historical and topographical description (London 1875). — *Gill*, Six month's residence on the island of Ascension (London 1878). — *Brooke*, History of St. Helena. — Deutsches Angra Pequena-Weißbuch, pag. 45.

### Niger Coast Protectorate.

London Gazette, 5th June 1885, 13th May 1893. — Deutsches Weißbuch 1888, VII pag. 51. — *Mockler-Ferryman A. F.*, Up the Niger, narrative of Major Claude Macdonald's mission to the Niger and Benue etc. (London 1892). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 439—479, 573, 574; II, pp. 658—661; III, pp. 972—975; 981—984. — Diplomatic and consular reports on trade and finance. Africa report for the years 1895—1896 of the administration of the Niger Coast Protectorate (London 1897).

### Niger Territories.

Report by Dr. Baikie on the geographical position of the countries in the neighbourhood of the Niger (London 1863). — *Rohlf's G.*, Quer durch Afrika (Leipzig 1874, 2 Bde.). — *Thomson J.*, Sôkoto (London 1886). — London Gazette, 13th July 1884, 26th August 1886 and 20th October 1887. — *Richardson R.*, Story of the Niger (London 1838). — Bluebook, C 5905. — Deutsches Weißbuch 1889, 7. Th. — *Monteil*, De St. Louis à Tripolis (Paris 1895). — Annual reports of the River Niger Company. — L'Afrique française, 1896, pag. 40. — *Regelsperger G.*, La France et l'Angleterre sur le Niger. La liberté de la navigation du fleuve (Paris 1896). — *Pillet A.*, La Liberté de Navigation du Niger. (Paris 1895). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 439—479; II, pp. 658—661; III, pp. 972—975, 981—984, 1018, 1019.

### Tshad Lake Countries.

*Barth H.*, Reisen und Entdeckungen in Nord- und Central-Afrika (Gotha, 1857 ff. 5 Bde.). — *Rohlf's G.*, Quer durch Afrika (Leipzig 1874, 2 Bde.). — *Nachtigal G.*, Sahara und Sudan (Berlin 1879 ff., 3 Bde.). — *Thomson J.*, Sôkoto (London 1886). — *Staudinger J.*, Im Herzen der Haussa-Länder (Berlin 1889). — *Monteil*, De St. Louis à Tripolis par le lac Tchad (Paris 1895). — *Robinson Ch. H.*, Haussaland (London 1897).

### Portuguese West Africa (Guinea, Senegal, Angola).

Parliamentary Papers 1890—1891, Nr. 2, 1894, Nr. 15. — Bluebook, C 5918, C 6212 and C 6370. — *Cordeiro L.*, Portugal and the Congo (London 1883). — Correspondence

relative to Negotiations between Great Britain and Portugal for conclusion of the Congo Treaty 1882—1884 (London 1884). — Boletim da Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa 1885—1886, 1887 Nr. 6 et 8, 1889 pag. 465. — La Gazette Géographique 1886, pag. 410. — Libr. blanc. 1887. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 30. December 1886 und 1. Juli 1887. — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1888, pag. 248. — Bulletin Société de Géographie commerciale (Bordeaux 1888, Nr. 4). — *Santos e Silva de J. E.*, Esboço historico do Congo e Loango nos tempos modernos (Lisboa 1888). — *Carvalho H. A. de*, Expedição Portuguesa ao Muatiânva (Lisboa 1889). — *Idem*, O Lubuco (Lisboa 1889). — *Brosselard H.*, La Guinée portugaise et les possessions françaises voisines (Lille 1890). — *Carvalho H. A. de*, Lunda on os Estados do Muatiânva dominio da soberania de Portugal (Lisboa 1890). — London Gazette, 26th August 1890. — *Weale J. P.*, The truth about the Portuguese in Africa (London 1891). — Diario do governo, 12. October 1891. — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 15. Juli 1890, 1891 pag. 520. — London Gazette, 15th May 1891. — Diario 22nd June 1892. — Mouvement géographique 1894, Nr. 8. — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 89. — *Van Iseghem A.*, Les îles portugaises de l'Afrique (Bruxelles 1897). — Scottish Geographical Magazine, Vol. XII, Nr. 11. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 683—692, 712—747; III, pp. 1004—1015.

### German South West Africa.

Angra Pequena (London 1884). — Arrangement between Great Britain and Germany relative to their respective Spheres in Africa (London 1885). — Deutsches Weißbuch, Angra Pequena, 1885. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 2. December 1885, 7. April 1886, 30. December 1886. — Mittheilungen aus den deutschen Schutzgebieten, 1887 ff. — Deutsche Kolonialzeitung von 1888 ab. — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 1889 bis 15. Juli 1890. — *Schinz II.*, Deutsch Südwest-Afrika (Oldenburg und Leipzig 1891). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 186). — Petermann's Mittheilungen, 1894 pag. 194, 1896 pag. 88. — *Dove K.*, Deutsch-Südwest-Afrika (Berlin 1896). — *François H. von*, Nama und Damara (Magdeburg 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 317—319; II, pp. 608—611. — *Bülow F. J. von*, Drei Jahre im Lande Hendrik Witboois (Berlin 1895, 2. Auflage 1897).

### Cape Colony.

London Gazette 18th January and 15th April 1806. — *Chase J. C. and Wilmoth A.*, History of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope (London 1870). — *Trollope A.*, South Africa (London 1878, 2 Vols.). — The general directory and guidebook to the Cape of Good Hope and its dependencies as well as the Free State, Transvaal and Natal. — *Granville*, Guide to South Africa (7th edition, London 1881). — *Statham F. R.*, Blacks, Boers and British (London 1882). — Cape Gazette, Extraordinary, 25th March 1885. — South African books on native affairs 1885—1896 (Capetown). — The Cape of Good Hope Government Gazette 1835. — Parliamentary „Reports“ in „The Times“. — Colonial Office's listes 1885—1896. — *Noble*, Official handbook History, productions and ressources of the Cape of Good Hope. (Capetown, 1886 seqq.). — *Moodie D. C. F.*, The history of the battles of the British, the Boers and the Zulus in Southern Africa (Capetown 1888, 2 Vols.). — *Gibbs E. J.*, England and South Africa (London 1889). — Journal Manchester Geographical Society 1889, page 201. — *Theal G. M.*, History of South Africa the republics and native territories from 1854 to 1872 (London 1889). — *Lélu P.*, L'Afrique du Sud. Histoire de la colonie anglaise du Cap de Bonne-Espérance et de ses annexes (Paris 1890). — London Gazette, 10th October 1884 31st July 1887, 2nd August 1887, 20th December 1889, 17th January 1890, 15th May 1891. — Bluebook, C 4588, C 4194, C 4263, C 4590, C 4643, C 5022, C 5143, C 5331, C 5524 C 5918, C 6217, C 7962 and „Reports“. — *Silver S. W. and Comp.*, Handbook to South Africa (1st edition 1880, 4th edition London 1891). — *Juta's* Map of South Africa, 1 : 2,500,000 (London 1891). — *Murray R. W.*, South Africa from Arab domination to British Rule

(London 1891). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 197). — *Worsfold W. B.*, South Africa (London 1895). — *Noble J.*, Handbook III. off. of the Cape Sand outh Africa (Capetown 1896). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 88. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 341—362; II pp. 672, 673.

### Bechuanaland.

*Holub E.*, Sieben Jahre in Süd-Afrika (Wien 1880, 2 Bde.). — London Gazette, 30th January 1885. — *Mackenzie J.*, Austral-Africa loosing it or ruling it (London 1887, 2 Vols.). — Bluebook, C 4643, C 4432, C 4194, C 4588, C 5488, C 5918 und C 7962. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 9. Mai 1891. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 195). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 334—337; III, pp. 990, 991.

### Rhodesia, British Zambesia.

*Torres Campos R.*, Portugal e Inglaterra en el Africa Austral (Boletim da Sociedad de Geographia (Madrid 1889, pag. 333). — London Gazette, 25th April 1888, 20th December 1889, 26th August 1890, 27th July 1894. — Bluebook, C 4643, C 5363, C 5524, C 5918, C 6212, C 6370, C 6699, C 7383, C 7637. — *Waller H.*, Nyassaland, Great Britain's case against Portugal (London 1890). — Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society (London 1890, pp. 150, 649). — *Mello C. de*, Os Ingleses na Africa Austral (Lisboa 1890). — *Silver S. W. and Comp.*, Handbook to South Africa (London 1891, pag. 382). — *Paiva de Andrade*. Manica (London 1891). — *Mathers E. P.*, Zambesia (London 1891). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 183). — *Knight E. F.*, Rhodesia of today (London 1895) — *Machado J.*, O Territorio de Manica etc. (Boletin Sociedade de Geographia (Lisboa 1895, pag. 491). — *Colquhoun A.*, Matabeleland (London). — *Wilmot A.*, Monomotapa (Rhodesia) (London 1896). — *Selous F. C.*, Sunshine and storm in Rhodesia (London, 1896). — *King J.*, Dr. Jameson's Raid. Its causes and consequences (London 1896). — *Baden-Powell R. S. S.*, The Matabele Campaign 1896 (London 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896, 3 Vols.) I, pp. 174—190. III, pp. 987—989, 1037—1040.

### British Central Africa and Protectorate (Nyassaland).

Bluebook, C 7504, C 7611. — Scott, Geographical Magazine 1888, Nr. 6, 1889 page 371. — *Cordeiro L.*, La question du Zaïre. Droits du Portugal (Lisbonne 1883). — Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society (London 1890, page 713). — Fortnightly Review, 1890, page 149. — *Markus Ferrão*, La question soulevée entre l'Angleterre et le Portugal (Lisboa 1890). — *Mello C. de*, A questão Inglesa (Lisboa 1890). — *Idem*, Os Ingleses na Africa Austral (Lisboa 1890). — *Carralho H. A. de*, Os cães britannicos ou a Nyassaland do Review Horace Waller (Lisboa 1890). — *Reis J. B.*, Os Portugueses na região do Nyassa (Lisboa 1890). — *Barros Gomez H. de*, A questão do Zumbo (Lisboa 1890). — London Gazette, 15th May 1891, 24th February 1893. — *Rankin, D. J.*, The Zambesi and Nyassaland (London and Edinburg 1893). — London Gazette, 22nd February 1893. — Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 6; 1895, Nr. 2. — British Central African Gazette 1896. — *Johnston H.*, British Central Africa (London 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), III, pp. 1025—1028.

### Orange Republic.

Vide Cape Colony and South African Republic — Bluebook, C 5232. — *Jeppe's*, Transvaal Almanac and Directory (Capetown). — *Silver S. W. and Comp.*, Handbook to South Africa (London 1891, pages 431 seqq.) — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 813—819.

## Basutoland, Natal, Zululand, Tongoland.

Vide Cape Colony. — Natal Bluebooks. — Natal Ordinances. — Natal Almanacs (Pietermaritzburg). — *Peace W.*, Our Colony of Natal (London 1884). — Natal Official handbook etc. (London 1886). — Chamber commercial journal (London 1888, page 59). — *Silver S. W. and Comp.*, Handbook to South Africa (London 1891, pages 427 seqq.). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 166). — London Gazette, 7th March 1893, 5th November 1895. — *Russel R.*, Natal the land and its story (Pietermaritzburg 1894). — Precis of information concerning Zululand (London 1895). — Bluebook, C 4645, C 5143, C 5143, C 5331, C 5522, C 6200, C 6201, C 7393, C 7395, C 7780, C 7878 and "Reports". — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII., pag. 197. — London Gazette, 11th June 1895. — Colonial reports Nr. 186. — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 186. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 329—332, 434—437, 529—536; III, pp. 1067, 1063, 1075—1073.

## South African Republic (Transvaal).

Bluebook, C 2695, C 3114, C 3841, C 3914, C 4214, C 4432, C 4644, C 4695, C 4980, C 5331, C 5892, C 6200, C 6217, C 7611, C 8308. — Schets Kaart aantoonende de grenslynen in Zuid Afrika etc. Scale 1:2,85 Mill. (Pretoria 1869). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII., pag. 190. — *Silver S. W.*, Handbook to the Transvaal (London 1877, page 421). — Bluebook for Transvaal Province (Pretoria 1879). — Transvaal Government Gazette 1881 seqq. — *Nixon J.*, The complete story of the Transvaal from the "Great Trek" to the Convention of London (London 1885). — *Theal G. M.*, History of the Boers in South Africa (London 1887). — *Jeppe F.*, Transvaal Book Almanac for 1887 (Maritzburg 1887). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 15. Juli 1890. — Fortnightly Review 1890, page 283. — *Blink H.*, De Zuid-Afrikaansche republiek en hare bewoners (Amsterdam 1890). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1892, pag. 129. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 188). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 88. — L'Afrique Française 1896, pag. 361. — *King J.*, Dr. Jameson's Raid. Its causes and consequences (London 1896). — *Mermeix*, Le Transvaal et la Chartered (2 édition, Paris 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 704—712, 822—828, 839—879, 903; III, pp. 1029—1036.

## Portuguese East Africa.

Parliamentary Papers, 1875, Nr. 1; 1890—1891, Nr. 2 — Bluebook, C 6370. — Boletim Official 1885 seqq. — Boletim da Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa 1885—1896, (1885, pag. 495). — Documentos apresentados as Cortes na sessão legisl. de 1886—1896. (Negocios da Africa oriental e central.) — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 30. December 1886. — Correspondence respecting the Delago Bay Railway (London 1889). — Libr. blanc. 1887. — Carta da provincia de Mozambique (Ministro de Marinha) Es. 1:3 Mill. (Lisboa 1889). — Correspondence respecting Portuguese Claims in South Africa (London 1890). — London Gazette, 26th August 1890. — *Marcel G.*, Les Portugais dans l'Afrique australe (Paris 1890). — *Cazenave L. de*, Divisions politiques de la province de Mozambique (Recueil. consul. LXII, pag. 208). — *Capello et Ivens*, Quelques notes sur l'établissement et les travaux des Portugais au Manomotapa (Lisboa 1890). — *D'Andrade A.*, Reconhecimento de Terreno da fronteira do Transvaal (Lisboa 1891). — Carta das possessões Portuguezas da Africa meridional segundo as convenções celebradas en 1891, 1:6 Mill. (Lisboa 1891). — *Murray R. W.*, South Africa etc. (I. P., London 1891). — Diario, 22 Jun. 1892. — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 181). — Peter-

mann's Mittheilungen 1896, pag. 89. — *Naronha E. de*, Lourenço Marques e as suas relações com a Africa do Sul. (Lisboa 1896.) — *Theal G. M.*, The Portuguese in South Africa (London 1896). — *Helwig Paul*, Die Delagoa-Bai und ihre Bedeutung für den Handel (Berlin 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 693—703, 705—747.

### Madagascar and Dependencies.

*Ellis*, History of Madagascar (London 1838, 2 Vols.). — *Mears*, The story of Madagascar (New York 1873). — *Grandidier A.*, Histoire physique, naturelle et politique de Madagascar (Paris 1876 seqq.). — Treaty concluded between France and Madagascar, 8th August 1868 (London 1883) see also Parliamentary Papers 1883, Nr. 4. — *Vassière P.*, Histoire de Madagascar (Paris 1884). — *Cremazy P.*, Notice bibliographique sur Madagascar (St. Denis 1884). — *Shaw G. H.*, Madagascar and France (London 1885). — *Saillens R.*, Nos droits sur Madagascar etc. (Paris 1885). — The Antananarivo Annual and Madagascar Magazine IV, (Antananarivo and London 1885 seqq.). — Correspondence respecting treaty of 17th December 1885 (London 1886) see also Parliamentary Papers 1886, Nr. 2. — Livre Jaune 1886. — *Guët J.*, Les origines de l'île Bourbon et de la colonisation française à Madagascar (Paris 1888). — *Le Chartier H. et Pellerin G.*, Madagascar depuis sa découverte jusqu'à nos jours (Paris 1888). — Les Colonies françaises (Paris 1890, Vol. I). — *Vignols L.*, La France à Madagascar de 1674 à 1750 (Revue de géographie 1890, pp. 292, 360). — *Grandidier A.*, Histoire de la géographie de Madagascar (2 édition, Paris 1893). — *Martineau A.*, Madagascar en 1894 (Paris 1894). — *Piolet J. B.*, Madagascar et les Hovas (Paris 1895). — *Brunet L.*, La France à Madagascar 1815—1895 (Paris 1895). — *Colin E. et Suan P.*, Madagascar et sa mission catholique (Paris 1895). — Livre jaune 1896. — Renseignements coloniaux 1896, pag. 53. — L'Afrique Française 1896, pp. 183, 204, 245. — *Hanotaux G.*, L'affaire de Madagascar (Paris 1896). — *Knigh E.*, Madagascar in War Time (London 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 571, 572, 788—800. — Le Journal Officiel de Madagascar 1897.

### Mauritius and Dependencies.

*Fleming*, Mauritius or the Isle of France (London 1862). — *Bonaparte R.*, Le premier Établissement des Néerlandais à Maurice (Paris 1890). — *Leclercq J.*, Au pays de Paul et Virginie (Paris 1895). — The Mauritius Almanac 1885—1896. — *Brauer A. Dr.*, Die Seychellen (Ges. für Erdkunde, Berlin, 16. Juni 1896). — The Geographical Journal, 1896, October.

### Réunion and Dependencies.

*Drasche-Wartimberg*, Die Insel Réunion (Wien 1877). — *Guët J.*, Les origines de l'île Bourbon (Paris 1887). — *Hue*, La Réunion et Madagascar (Paris 1890).

### The Comoro Islands.

*Grevey*, Essai sur les Comores (Pondichéry 1870). — *Genin J.*, Madagascar, les îles Comores, Mayotte etc. (Paris 1889). — Les Colonies françaises (Paris 1890, Vol. I). — *Armières, Dr.*, Les Iles Comores (Paris 1890).

### Zanzibar.

List of Orders in Council, 1866—1893. — *New, Life, wanderings and labours in Eastern Africa* (London 1873). — Correspondences relating to Zanzibar (London 1886 seqq.). — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 30. December 1886. — *Schmidt K. W.*, Sansibar (Leipzig 1888). — Revue de géographie 1890, pag. 297. — London Gazette, 4th November 1890,

9th February 1892, 21st July 1893. — *Baumann O.*, Die Insel Zanzibar (Leipzig 1897). — *Idem*, Die Insel Pemba (Leipzig 1897). — Gazette for Zanzibar and East Africa, 20th January 1897. — *Mc Dermott*, British East Africa. (London 1893), pp. 264, 268 seqq. — Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 1. — Bluebook C 5578, C 5603. — *Hertslet E.* The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 547, 570, 605—607, 615—622, 750—770, 925—966, 995; III, 992—994.

### German East Africa.

Die Lage in Afrika unmittelbar vor und nach dem deutsch-englischen Vertrage vom politischen Standpunkte aus betrachtet (Dresden 1870). — National-Zeitung 1884, pag. 3012. — Denkschrift über die deutschen Schutzgebiete 1884—1886 (II, pag. 44), und vom 2. December 1885 (III, pag. 201). — Arrangement between Great Britain and Germany relative to their respective Spheres in Africa (London 1885). — Weißbücher 1885 ff., besonders Nr. 56, VIII, XI, X, 1890—1891. — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger (1885—1896), besonders 3. März 1885; 30. November 1886; 21. Juli 1887; 22. October 1889; 10. Juli 1890. — Parliamentary Papers 1886, Nr. 1; 1887, Nr. 3; 1890, Nr. 2. — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1887, pp. 58 und 123. — Kolonialpolitische Correspondenz vom 26. Februar 1887. — Mittheilungen aus den deutschen Schutzgebieten 1887 seqq. — Deutsche Kolonialzeitung von 1888 ab. — *Meinecke*, Koloniales Jahrbuch 1888, pag. 237. — *Wagner*, Deutsch-Ostafrika (Berlin 1888). — *Idem*, Die deutsch-ostafrikanische Kolonie in ihrer Entstehungsgeschichte etc. (Berlin 1889). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt 1889 ff., besonders 15. Juli 1890. — Correspondence respective Anglo-German Agreement relating to Africa and Heligoland (London 1890). — *Förster B.*, Deutsch-Ostafrika (Leipzig 1890). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1890, pag. 194. — *Vohsen E.*, Zum deutsch-englischen Vertrag (Berlin 1890). — *Schroeder-Poggelov*, Unsere Afrika-Politik in den letzten zwei Jahren (Berlin 1890). — *Wagner-Supan*, Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. (Gotha 1892, pag. 179). — *Reichard P.*, Deutsch-Ostafrika (Leipzig 1892). — *Schmidt R.*, Geschichte des Araber-Aufstandes in Ostafrika (Frankfurt a. O. 1892). — *Mc Dermott P. L.*, British East Africa (London 1893), Appendices. — *Peters K.*, Das deutsch-ostafrikanische Schutzgebiet (München und Leipzig 1895). — *Stullmann F.*, Mit Emin Pascha etc. (Berlin 1897). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 303—316; II, pp. 623—627, 630—657, 754—770; III, pp. 985, 1024.

### British East Africa.

Diplomatic and consular reports on trade and finance 1894. — *Wilson C. T. and Felkin R. W.*, Uganda and the Egyptian Soudan (London 1882, 2 Vols.). — Deutscher Reichsanzeiger, 30. December 1886. — London Gazette, 7th September 1888, 4th and 25th November 1890, 22nd November 1890, 19th June 1894, 15th June 1895 and 1st September 1896. — The story of the Uganda Mission (London 1889). — Bluebook, C 6555, C 7225, Parliamentary Papers Africa Nr. 4 (1892), Nr. 25 (1894). — Deutsches Kolonialblatt, 15. Juli 1890. — *Stock S.*, The story of Uganda and the Victoria Nyanza Mission (London 1892). — British East Africa and Uganda (London 1892). — L'Ouganda et les agissements de la compagnie anglaise "East Africa" (Paris 1892). — *Bentley E.*, Handbook to the Uganda Question etc. (London 1892). — *Mc Dermott P. L.*, British East Africa or Ibea. A history of the formation and work of the Imperial British East Africa Company (London 1893), pp. 263, 376. — Quaterly Review 1893 (Uganda). — *Lugard F. D.*, The Rise of our East African Empire (London 1893 2 Vols.). — Handbook of British East Africa, prepared in Intelligence Division, War Office (London 1893). — L'Ouganda (Paris 1893). — *Ashe R.*, Chronicles of Uganda (London 1894). — *Colville, Henry, Sir*, The Land of the Nile Springs being chiefly an account of how we fought Kabarega. (New York 1895). — L'Afrique Française 1896, pag. 256. — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 107—172; II, pp. 754—770; III, pp. 995—997, 1016, 1017, 1069—1071.

### British Somaliland and Sokotra.

Transactions Bombay Geographical Society 1846, page 111; 1850, page 129. — *Robinson*, Sokotra (London 1878). — *Révoil G.*, Voyage au Cap des Aromates (Paris 1880). — *Idem*, La vallée du Daror (Paris 1882). — *Paulitschke Ph.*, Geographische Erforschung der Adäl-Länder etc. (Leipzig 1884). — Proceedings of the R. G. S. London, 1885, October. — *Hunter F.*, Harar (London 1884). — Petermann's Mittheilungen 1887, pag. 32. — Colonial Office list, 1891, page 310. — Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 1, 17. — Report on the reconnaissance of the Northern Somaliland (1891). — *Swayne H. G. C.*, 17 trips in Somaliland (London 1895). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 669, 670, 829, 830—835; III, pp. 976—980.

### French Possessions of the Gulf of Aden.

Journal Officiel, 25 Decembre 1880. — *Rivoyre D. de*, Oboc (Paris 1883). — Documents parlementaires, Novembre 1885, pag. 1022. — Journal Officiel, 4 Mars 1886. — *Faurot*, Oboc (Paris 1886). — Les Colonies françaises (Paris 1890, Vols. VI, pp. 241—288). — *Salma L. de*, Obock (Paris 1893). — Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 1. — L'Afrique Française, 1896, pag. 188. — I. R. United Service I, pag. 41 (1897), 623—630: Obock etc. — *Vanderheyem*, Cinq mois avec le Négous Ménélic (Paris 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 269—275; III, pp. 976—980.

### Italian Possessions in North East Africa.

*Guillain M.*, Documents sur l'histoire, la géographie et le commerce de l'Afrique orientale (Paris 1856, 3 Vols.). — Provedimenti per la costituzione e l'ordinamento di una colonia italiana in Assab (Minist. d. a. ff. est. 1882, 1886). — Possessi o protettorati in Africa (Annuario statistico italiano), 1885 seqq. — Atti parlamentari XVI, 1886. — Documenti diplomatici presentati al parlamento italiano (Libri verdi, XIV, XV, XVII, XVIII), 24. Aprile, 2. Maggio e 9. Novembre 1888, 17. Dicembre 1889, 4. Marzo 1890, 17. Marzo 1891 16. Aprile 1891, 25. Luglio 1895 e 27. Aprile 1896. — *Mc Dermott, P. L.* British East Africa (London 1893), Appendices. — Africa Italiana (Journal). — Austria, 1889, pag. 506. — Relazione annuale sulla Colonia Eritrea. — Parliamentary Papers 1894, Nr. 17. — *Bruchhausen v.*, Die Italiener in Afrika (Beiheft zum Militärischen Wochenblatt 1895, pag. 317). — L'Afrique Française, 1896, pag. 397. — Eritrea: La colonia italiana in Africa e Francesco Crispi, il parlamento ed il paese (Roma 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), II, pp. 665—670, 772—776, 888, 889, 949—960; III, pp. 1072—1074.

### Abyssinia.

*Bruce J.*, Travels etc. (Edinburg 1790, 5 Vols.). — *Salt H.*, Account etc. (London 1814). — *Rochet d'Héricourt C. E. H.*, Voyage sur la côte orientale de la Mer Rouge (Paris 1841). — *Harris W. C.*, The highlands of Aethiopia (London 1844, 3 Vols.). — *Rochet d'Héricourt C. E. H.*, Voyage sur la côte orientale de la Mer Rouge (Paris 1848). — Bulletin de la Société Khédiviale de Géographie 1876, pag. 351. — *Rohlf's G.*, Meine Mission etc. (Leipzig 1883). — *Paulitschke Ph.*, Geographische Erforschung der Adäl-Länder etc. (Leipzig 1884). — *Caix de Saint-Aymour de*, La France en Éthiopie etc. (Paris 1886). — *Paulitschke Ph.*, Harar (Leipzig 1888). — *Mantegazza P.*, Da Massaua a Saati (Milano 1888). — Documenti diplomatici presentati al parlamento Italiano (Libri verdi), 1890, pp. 127, 128, 270, 273, 376, 434; 2. ser. pag. 19; 1891, pag. 101. — *Costi*, Storia d'Etiochia (Milano 1890). — *Borelli J.*, Éthiopie méridionale (Paris 1890). — *Sapeto G.*, Etiopia (Roma 1890). — Bolletino della Società Africana d'Italia (Sez. Napolet.) 1890, pag. 136. — *Constantin de*, L'Archimandrite Païsi et l'Ataman Achinoff. Une expédition religieuse en Abyssinie (Paris 1891). — *Nerazzini*, La conquista mussulmana dell' Etiopia nel secolo XVI. (Roma

1891). — *Fumagalli G.*, Bibliografia etiopica (Milano 1893). — *Paronelli F.*, Amba Alagi e Makale (Como 1896). — *Robecchi-Bricchetti L.*, Nell' Harrar (Milano 1896). — *Hertslet E.*, The Map of Africa by Treaty (London 1896), I, pp. 1—18. — *Vignères S.*, Une mission française en Abyssinie (Paris 1897). — *D'Abbadie A. et Paulitschke Ph.*, Foutoukh el-Hâbacha (Paris 1898).

## General.

Berlin Act of 26th February 1885. — *Rimbaud*, La France coloniale (Paris 1886). — Convention between the governments of Great Britain, Germany, Austria-Hungary, France, Italy, Russia and Turkey relative to the finance of Egypt, signed at London, 18th March 1885 (London 1885). — Correspondence respecting the proposed international convention for securing the free navigation of the Suez Canal (London 1888). — Petermann's Mittheilungen, 1888, pp. 160 ff. — Actes de la conférence de Bruxelles 1889—1890 et la traite des esclaves en Afrique. (Bruxelles 1890, 3 Vols.). — *Scarsez de Locqueneuille*, L'esclavage ses promoteurs et ses adversaires. Notes et documents etc. (Liège 1890). — *Philibert et Rolland G.*, La France en Afrique et le Transsaharien (Paris 1890). — Corpo di stato maggiore Italiano: Possedimenti e protettorati Europei in Africa 1890 (Roma 1890), 2. Edizione. — *Rolland G.*, Le Transsaharien un an après (Paris 1891). — *Binger*, Cap., Esclavage, islamisme et christianisme (Paris 1891). — *Sabatier C.*, Touat, Sahara et Soudan (Paris 1891). — *Fock A.*, Algérie, Sahara, Tchad etc. (Paris 1891). — *Atis H.*, La conquête du Tchad (Paris 1891). — *Silva White A.*, On the comparative value of African Lands (Scott. Geographical Magazine, 1891, page 191). — *Idem*, The development of Africa (London 1890). — *Rawson R. W.*, The territorial partition of the coast of Africa (Proceedings R. G. S. London, 1884, pp. 615—632). — The Imperial Institute yearbook (London 1892 seqq.). — *Wagner-Supan*, Die Bevölkerung der Erde, VIII. Supplement zu Petermann's Mittheilungen Nr. 101 (Gotha 1892, pp. 139—202). — *Scott Keltie J.*, The partition of Africa (London 1893). — Documents relatifs à la répression de la traite des esclaves publiés en exécution des articles LXXXI et suivant de l'acte général de Bruxelles 1892 (Bruxelles 1893). — *Sebillot A.*, Le Transafricain (Paris 1893). — *Guenin E.*, Histoire de la colonisation française, I. (Paris 1896). — *Zimmermann Alfred*, Die europäischen Kolonien. I. Band. Die Kolonialpolitik Portugals und Spaniens in ihrer Entwicklung von den Anfängen bis zur Gegenwart (Berlin 1896). — *Fitzner Rudolf*, Deutsches Kolonialhandbuch. (Berlin 1896). — *Chaudor du Cte. de*, Considérations sur la politique extérieure et coloniale de la France (Paris 1897). — *Septans*, Les expéditions anglaises en Afrique (Paris 1897). — Documents officiels. I. et II. Publication de l'Institut colonial international (Bruxelles. 2 série. Paris 1896 et 1897). — *Meinecke G.*, Koloniales Jahrbuch. Beiträge und Mittheilungen aus dem Gebiet der Kolonialwissenschaft und Kolonialpolitik. 9. Jahrgang 1896 (Berlin 1897). — Das Weißbuch. Theil XVII. (Berlin 1897). — *Lucas C. P.*, A historical Geography of the British Colonies. Vols. 4: South and East Africa. Part 1: Historical, with maps; Part 2: Geographical, with maps. (London 1897). — *Rouard de Card E.*, Les traités de protectorat conclus par la France en Afrique 1870—1895. (Paris 1897). — *Brose Max*, Die deutsche Kolonialliteratur von 1884—1895 (Berlin 1897, Deutsche Kolonial-Gesellschaft.) — Annuaire de l'année coloniale de 1897 (Paris). — Institut colonial international: Les fonctionnaires coloniaux (Paris 1897). — Revue diplomatique et coloniale (Paris 1897). — *De Clecq*, Collection of French Treaties. — *Chalmers' Treaties*. — *Martens Recueil* etc. — *Jancr D. Flor.*, Tratatos de España. — *Hertslet's Treaties*. — *Scott Keltie's*, Statesman's Yearbook. — *Hertslet Ed. Sir*, The Map of Africa by Treaty. 2nd edition 3 Vols. (London 1896.)

## Maps.

Carte de l'Algérie (Service géographique de l'Armée) 1 : 50.000 (Paris 1884 seqq.). — *Perrier*, Carte de la Tunisie, 1 : 200.000 (Paris 1884—1886). — *Monteil-Binger*, Carte des Établissements Français du Sénégal (Paris 1886). — *Gaultier*, Carte de l'Algérie et de

la Tunisie (Paris 1887). — *Merensky*, Original Map of South Africa, 1 : 2,500.000 (4th Edition, Berlin 1889). — *De Lannoy de Bissy R.*, Carte de l'Afrique, 1 : 2,000.000 (Paris 1889 seqq.). — *Juta*, Map of South Africa, 1 : 2,500.000 (London 1891). — *Ravenstein E. G.*, A Map of Eastern Equatorial Africa, 1 : 1,000.000 (London 1882). — *Habenicht H.*, Specialkarte von Afrika, 1 : 4,000.000 (3. Edition, Gotha 1892). — *Kiepert R.*, Specialkarte von Deutsch-Südwestafrika, 1 : 3,000.000 (Berlin 1893). — *Langhans P.*, Deutscher Kolonial-Atlas (Gotha 1894). — *Chaurand de E.*, Carta dimostrativa della Etiopia, 1 : 1,000.000 (Roma 1894). — *Debes E.*, Nouvelle carte de l'Égypte et ses dépendances, 1 : 3,000.000 (Berlin 1895). — *Binger*, Carte du Haut Niger au golfe de Guinée par le pays de Kong et le Mossi, 1 : 1,000.000 (Paris 1895). — *Langhans P.*, Südwestafrikanisches Schutzgebiet, 1 : 2,000.000 (Gotha 1896). — *Wauters A. J.*, Carte de l'État Indépendant du Congo, Supplement Mouvement Géographique, 1 : 2,000.000 (Bruxelles 1896). — *Kiepert R.*, Karte von Deutsch-Ostafrika, 1 : 300.000 (Berlin 1895 ff.). — *Langhans Paul*, Schutzgebiete Kamerun und Togo in 4 Blättern mit 16 Nebenkarten, 1 : 2,000.000. — *Idem*, Ostafrikanisches Schutzgebiet, 1 : 2,000.000 (Gotha 1897). — *Hansen*, Congo français, publiée par le service géographique des colonies 1 : 1,500.000 (Paris 1895). — Wandkarte von Deutsch-Ostafrika. Redigiert von Dr. *Richard Kiepert*. 6 Blätter. 1 : 1,000.000 (Berlin). — *Flotte de Roquevaire R. de*, Carte du Maroc à l'échelle du 1,000.000<sup>e</sup> avec notice et index bibliographique (Paris 1897). — *Vuillot, P.*, Soudan français et côte occidentale d'Afrique. 1 : 4,000.000 (Paris 1897). — *Berghaus', Stieler's, Kiepert's, Vidal de la Blache's, W. and A. K. Johnston's Atlas.*

# Geographical Register.

(The Figures refer to the number of the Page.)

- A.
- Abâj 97.  
Abasuën 89, 91.  
Abba Garima 96.  
‘Abd el-Kury 90.  
Abeokutta 31, 35.  
Abyssinia 93, 97.  
Abomé (Abomey) 35, 37.  
Abû Klea 7.  
Accra 30 f.  
Adamawa (Adamaua) 40, 43.  
Adda 30.  
Addifuha 91.  
Addis ababâ 100.  
Addo 35.  
Adel 98.  
Adeli 34.  
Aden 90.  
Adrar 19.  
Adua 96.  
Aegenni 37.  
‘Afâr 91, 92.  
Afrikijja 10.  
Agaishé 36.  
Agordat 7.  
Agué 35 f.  
Ain Salah 15.  
Ajada 35.  
Ajuda 35, 36.  
Akim 30.  
Akwama 30.  
Albert-Edward Lake 87.  
Albert-Nyanza 50, 87.  
Albreda 29.  
Aldabra-Islands 82.  
Alexandria 2.  
Alfred County 70.  
Algiers 12, 42.  
Alhucemas 18.
- Alina 17, 47.  
Allada 35, 36.  
Ama Kossa 61.  
Amaoful 31.  
Amatorgo 72.  
Ambabo 91.  
Ambâs Bay 45.  
Amboella 55.  
Amboland 50.  
Ambriz 52, 54.  
Amhâra 97, 98.  
Amirantes 80.  
Anamaboe 30.  
Anehó 34.  
Angola 52, 54, 55, 65.  
Ankori 87.  
Annobón 45.  
Antanânarivo 79.  
Antotto 99.  
Appollonia 30.  
Ardra 36.  
Arguin 18, 21.  
Aribinda 24.  
Aroangva 65, 68.  
Aroossi 97.  
Arussi-Galla 94.  
Asaba 41.  
Ashanti 31.  
Ascension 56.  
Asdscher 7.  
Asgar 7.  
Asmara 96.  
Assab 93, 94, 95.  
Assinië 21, 26, 27.  
Assinië River 25.  
Assumption 80, 82.  
Astove 82.  
Atbara 93.  
Audsbila 8.  
Aussa 94, 95.  
Avon Lagoon 34.
- Axim 30.  
Azores 20.
- B.
- Bachunu 24.  
Badagry 31.  
Bafing 23.  
Baghirmi 8, 41.  
Bahia del Oeste 18.  
Bahr el-arab 6.  
Bahr el-azraq 87.  
Bahr el-ghasâl 6, 53.  
Bamaliti 61.  
Bambara 24.  
Bambuk 24.  
Bangweolo Lake 50, 69.  
Bardera 94.  
Barka 8, 93.  
Barolong 61.  
Barotse 54, 55, 68.  
Barrana (Barrawa) 21, 39.  
Barua (Baruwa) 21, 39.  
Bas de côte 25.  
Bassam 24.  
Bassas de India 79.  
Basutoland 61, 62, 70.  
Batanga 44.  
Batete 22.  
Bathurst 29.  
B. C. A. 67.  
Bechuanaland Protectorate  
60, 61, 63.  
Bequah 31.  
Begemeder 97.  
Beira 77.  
Beled el-dsherid 10.  
Beled es-Sudân 5.  
Beledugu 26.  
Benâdir 93, 96.  
Bender Ziada 89, 94.  
Benghâsi 8.

Benguella 54, 55.

Beni Amër 94, 95.

Beni Mzab 14.

Benin 35, 37.

Benuë 39, 43.

Berber 4.

Berbera 90.

Betsileos 78.

Betsimisarakas 78.

Biafara 43.

Biokabôba (Bia Kabôba)

89, 91, 94.

Bismarckburg 34.

Bissagos 28.

Blânco, Cape 18.

Blantyre 69.

Bloemfontein 73.

Bodelê 8.

Bogos territories 6.

Bogos 99.

Bojador Cape 18.

Bolâma 28.

Boma 54.

Bon, Cape 10.

Bondu 24.

Boratsile 64.

Borgu 32, 40.

Borku 8.

Bornu 9, 39, 41.

Brass River 37.

Brava 83, 84, 96.

British Bechuanaland 59.

British Central Africa 65.

British Central Africa Pro-  
tectorate 69.

British East Africa 86.

British Kaffraria 62.

British Somaliland 89.

British South Africa Com-  
pany 65.

Brothers Islands 90.

Bulam 28.

Bulawayo 67.

Bumtu 21.

Buseïma 8.

Bussang 40.

### C.

Cabinda 47, 54.

Cacheo 26, 27.

Cairo 2, 5.

Calabar 43, 44.

Cama 52.

Cameroon 37, 43.

Campo River 43, 45.

Canary Islands 19, 20.

Cape Blanco 18.

Cape Coast Castle 30.

Cape Colony 59, 70.

Cape Corrientes 82.

Cape Delgado 76.

Cape Frio 59.

Cape Guardafui 94.

Cape Mount 29.

Cape Palmas 25, 32.

Cape of Good Hope 59.

Cape Verde Islands 20.

Capetown 61, 63.

Carabane 26.

Cargados 80.

Casamanza 25.

Cassini 27.

Catak 27.

Câyor 22 f.

Cerf 82.

Cette 52.

Ceuta 17, 18.

Chafarimas Islands 18.

Chagos Islands 80.

Chinde 69.

Chiuta Lake 67.

Chiwanga 68.

Chor Gash 93.

Cidade de Praya 20.

Combia 27.

Combo 29.

Comores 81.

Compony 26, 27.

Conakry 27.

Congo 47, 51, 54.

Congo français 46.

Congo State 49.

Constantine 12.

Coomassi 31.

Corisco 45.

Cosmoledo 80, 82.

Côte française des Somalis 91.

Crepî 30.

Croboe 30.

Crocodile River 74.

Cross River 38.

Cubango 54, 57.

Cunené 54, 57.

Cyrenaika 8.

### D.

Dabú 26.

Dakhel 1.

Dagomba 34.

Dahlak-Archipelago 94.

Dahomey 27, 33, 35.

Dakar 21.

Damaraland 57, 58.

Damerghu 13.

Damietta 2.

Danâkil 91, 94, 95.

Dâr Banda 6.

Dâr es-salâm 86.

Dâr Fertit 6, 47.

Dâr Fîr 1, 3, 9, 42, 47, 87.

Davali 89, 91.

Debbeh 1.

Delta 2.

Denkera 30.

Desertas 20.

Diankolo River 21.

Diego Garcia 80.

Diego Suarez 79.

Dilolo-Lake 50.

Dixcove 30.

Djimma 97, 98.

Djogué 26.

Dogali 95, 99.

Dolbohanta 90.

Dongola 1, 5.

Draa 15.

Dshalo 8.

Dsharabub 1, 8.

Dshezirah 6.

Dshezira Soba 91.

Dshibuti 91.

Dshildessa 89, 91.

Dsholi 16.

Dshub-(Juba-)River 83, 94.

Dsitambo's Village 69.

Dullul 91.

Dumejra 91.

### E.

Eagle Islands 80.

East Africa Protectorate 86.

East-Griqualand 60.

Ederi 7.

Egba 32.

Egypt 1.

Ejssa-Somali 90.

El Arish 2.

El Bibân 7, 10.  
 El Gada 15.  
 El Gharb 14.  
 El Golea 12.  
 El Hâbasha 97.  
 El Obeid 4, 6.  
 El Sa'îd 2.  
 El Teb 4, 6, 7.  
 Elephant Islands 29.  
 Elmina 30  
 Eloby 45.  
 Emin Pasha's Province 50,  
 87.  
 Ennedi 8.  
 Ennerea 98.  
 Erer 97.  
 Erg 7.  
 Eritrea 93, 96.  
 Essaman 31.  
 Eshowe 72.  
 Estado d'Âfrica Oriental 78.  
 Etembue 43.  
 Ethiopie Rapids 43.  
 Ethiopia 97.  
 Europa 79.

F.

Falemé 21.  
 Falkât River 93.  
 Fanti 31.  
 Farâfrah 1.  
 Farquhar 82  
 Fàs (Fès) 15, 17.  
 Fellatah 40.  
 Fernando Pó 45, 46  
 Fezzân 7, 9.  
 Fetishtown 44  
 Figig 15.  
 Forcados 37.  
 Fort Rosebery 69.  
 Foulepointe 78,  
 Frao River 39, 43.  
 Freetown 30.  
 French Congo 46.  
 French Guinea 25.  
 French Soudân 21, 23.  
 Friedrichsburg (Gross-) 34.  
 Fuladugu 24.  
 Fulbe (Fellatah), Dominion  
 of 39.  
 Funchal 20.  
 Futa Dshallon 22, 24.  
 Futa Toro 24.

## G.

Gaboon 45, 47.  
 Gadaburssi 89, 94.  
 Galega 82.  
 Galla 87, 94, 97.  
 Gambia 21, 29.  
 Gambia River 29.  
 Gana 37.  
 Gando 34, 39, 40.  
 Gangella 54, 55.  
 Gangommé 22.  
 Garayos 82.  
 Gasaland 76.  
 Geba 27.  
 Georgetown 29, 56.  
 German East Africa 84.  
 German South West Africa  
 57  
 Ghadâmes 7, 10, 12.  
 Ghât 7, 9.  
 Glehué 35.  
 Glorioso-Islands 78.  
 Godshâm 97.  
 Gold Coast Colony 30.  
 Gold Coast 21, 25.  
 Gooragê 97.  
 Goorma (Gurma) 24, 30, 34.  
 Goosen 64.  
 Goré 21.  
 Gough's Island 56.  
 Grand Bassa 33.  
 Grand Bassam 25.  
 Grand Lahou 25.  
 Grand Popo 35, 36.  
 Great-Comore 81.  
 Great Fish River 61.  
 Great-Windhoek 59.  
 Griqualand 60.  
 Gross Friedrichsburg 34.  
 Gubat 7.  
 Gubet Kharâib 91.  
 Gudru 97.  
 Guimbering 26.  
 Guinea Portuguese 21.  
 Guinée Française 25.  
 Gura 98.  
 Gurâra 13.  
 Gurma 24, 30, 34.  
 Guro 13.

## H.

Habab 94, 95.  
 Habr Auâl 90.

Habr Gerhâdji 90.  
 Habr Toldshalej 90.  
 Hadu 94.  
 Handûb 7.  
 Harar 3, 91, 97.  
 Haut Ubangi 42.  
 Hawash 91.  
 Hawija 94.  
 Hickorytown 44.  
 Hombonu 36.  
 Hovas 78.  
 Humbé 54, 58.

## I.

Ibadan 32.  
 I. B. F. A. 86.  
 Ibo 76.  
 Idu 37.  
 Ifni 18.  
 Ilhas do Cabo Verde 20.  
 Imperial British East Africa  
 86.  
 Inaccessible 56.  
 Ingogo 74.  
 Inhambane 76.  
 Insalah (Ain Salah) 13, 15.  
 Iramba 85.  
 Isandula 62.  
 Isa-Somâl (Siehe Ejssa.)  
 Iskobio 31.  
 Isle de Bourbon 80.  
 Isle de France 86.  
 Ismailia 2.  
 Isola do principe 46.  
 Itala 96.  
 Itjopja 97.  
 Ivory Coast 21, 25.

## J.

Jackville 25.  
 Jamestown 57.  
 Jatenga 24.  
 Jebu (Yebu) 32.  
 Johanna (Comores) 81.  
 Johannesburg 75.  
 Jola (Yola) 38, 43.  
 Jorubaland (Yoruba) 35.  
 Juan de Nova 79.  
 Juba Factory 49, 54, 96.  
 Juba-(Dshub-)River 83.  
 Juby Cape 14, 15, 16.

## K.

Kaarta 24.  
 Kaba 26.  
 Kabitai 26.  
 Kabompo 68.  
 Kaffa 97.  
 Kâha 98.  
 Kana 36, 37.  
 Kânem 8, 41.  
 Kaokoland 58.  
 Karagwe 85.  
 Karonga 84.  
 Kasâr Râs 1, 93.  
 Kashgil 4, 6.  
 Kasongo 51.  
 Kassai 51, 52, 54.  
 Kassala 7, 93, 95.  
 Katanga 50, 51.  
 Katima-Falls 58, 68.  
 Kawâr 8.  
 Kawende 85.  
 Kawirondo 84, 87.  
 Kayes 21, 25.  
 Kazembe's Dominion 68.  
 Kebâbo 8.  
 Kelmina 37.  
 Kemi 1.  
 Kenâtsa 15.  
 Keren 95, 96.  
 Kerguelen 81.  
 Khartoum 4, 7.  
 Khatete 22.  
 Kibwezi 89.  
 Kilima Ndsharo 84.  
 Kilwa Lake 67.  
 Kionga Bay 76, 87.  
 Kipini 83.  
 Kismayu 83.  
 Klein-Povo (Popo) 34.  
 Koba 27.  
 Kobê 7.  
 Koki 87.  
 Konde 85.  
 Kong 24, 26.  
 Kordofân 1, 4, 6, 9, 87.  
 Kosi Bay 76.  
 Kosseir 2.  
 Kotonu 36, 37.  
 Kribi 44.  
 Krikor 30.  
 Kuango 51.  
 Kufra 8.

Kuilu 46, 47, 51.  
 Kuka (Kukaua) 9, 39, 41.  
 Kumassi (Coomassi) 31.  
 Kuria Muria 90.

## L.

La Calle 10.  
 Ladó 6, 50.  
 Laghuat 14.  
 Lagos 31, 32, 37.  
 Laing's Neck 74.  
 Lamé 43.  
 Lamu 83.  
 Laurenço Marquez 76, 77.  
 Lavadu 89.  
 Lekke 31.  
 Les Frères 91.  
 Liberia 23, 24, 32 f.  
 Libreville 48.  
 Licona 52.  
 Likuala 47.  
 Limpopo 73.  
 Little Adra 36.  
 Little Povo (Popo) 34.  
 Loanda 54, 55.  
 Loango 48, 54.  
 Loangwa 65, 68.  
 Logé 52.  
 Logone 43.  
 Lokodja 41.  
 Lolodorf 44.  
 Lome 33, 35.  
 Los Islands 25.  
 Lovadu 91.  
 Luapula 50, 69.  
 Lüderitzland 58.  
 Lunda 53, 55.  
 Lunti 66.

## M.

Mac Carthy-Island 29.  
 Madagascar 78.  
 Madeira 20.  
 Mafeking 61.  
 Mafia 84, 85.  
 Magdala 98.  
 Maghrib el-aqsá 14.  
 Mahdi, Dominion of 5.  
 Mahdijja 5.  
 Mahé 80.  
 Mahis 35.  
 Majo Kebu 43.  
 Majuba 74.  
 Maklutji 66.  
 Manda 83, 88.  
 Mandinka 24, 32.  
 Manica-Plateau 66, 67, 77.  
 Manjanga 47.  
 Mao 41.  
 Maputa River 71.  
 Maqdishu 83, 84.  
 Marar 94.  
 Marêa 94, 95.  
 Mareb 93.  
 Marocco 97.  
 Maryland 33.  
 Mashonaland 66, 75.  
 Maseru 70.  
 Massabi 47, 54.  
 Massai 87.  
 Massenja 42.  
 Massina 24.  
 Massowah 94, 95.  
 Matabeleland 63, 66, 75.  
 Matam 21.  
 Mauritius 80.  
 Mayo Kebbi 42, 44.  
 Mayotta 81.  
 Mazoe River 65.  
 Mbomu 47.  
 M'bzimi 85.  
 Melilla 18.  
 Melindi 88.  
 Mellacorée 26.  
 Mendif 44.  
 Mengo 89.  
 Merâkesh 15.  
 Merâwi 1, 5.  
 Merihân 94.  
 Merka 83, 84, 96.  
 Meru Lake 50, 69.  
 Mesurado 33.  
 Mfumbiro 84.  
 Midshurtin 94, 96.  
 Milmil 89.  
 Misahöhe 34.  
 Misr 1.  
 Misr-el-bahri 2.  
 Mkusi 72.  
 Mogador 16, 18.  
 Mohilla 81.  
 Molopo 60, 63.  
 Mombâsa 82, 87, 89.  
 Monrovia 33.

Morocco 14.  
 Mosilekatze 62.  
 Mossámedes 54, 55.  
 Mossi (Mushi) 24, 30.  
 Mozambique 56, 76.  
 M'Pall 22.  
 Mpashi 54, 58  
 Mpororo 87.  
 Mrima 83.  
 M-Sinje 67.  
 Muata Jamwo (Yamwo) 55.  
 Mulúja River 14, 15.  
 Muni 45.  
 Murzuq 9.  
 Musardu 33.  
 Musha Islands 91, 92.  
 Mushi (Mossi) 24, 30.

## N.

Namaland 57.  
 Namaqualand 50.  
 Naronga 68.  
 Natal 62, 70.  
 Ndara 54, 58.  
 N'Diandor 22.  
 Ndoruma's Capital 47.  
 New-Amsterdam 81.  
 New Republic (Zululand) 74.  
 Ngála 43.  
 Ngolgol 22.  
 Nguru 83.  
 Niam-Niam 47, 87.  
 Niari 46.  
 Niger Coast Protectorate 37.  
 Niger-River 13, 38.  
 Niger Territories 38.  
 Nightingale Islands 56.  
 Nile 50.  
 Nokki 51.  
 Nosob 60.  
 Nossi-Bé 78, 79.  
 Nubia 1, 6.  
 Nun Cape 15.  
 Nun, Mouth of 37.  
 Nuñez River 25.  
 Nyassa 67, 68, 76.  
 Nyassaland 66, 69.

## O.

Obbia 94, 96.  
 Obock 91, 92.  
 Ogadèn 94.

Ogbomotsho (Obomotsho) 32,  
 35.  
 Ogowe 46, 47, 48, 52.  
 Oil Islands 80.  
 Oil river 37.  
 Okavango 58, 63.  
 Omdermân (Omdurman) 7, 9.  
 Oran 12.  
 Orango 28.  
 Orange-Republic 60, 70, 72.  
 Orange River 57, 65, 70, 71.  
 Oratsghi 37.  
 Ordashu 31.  
 Ossimi 23.  
 Ozi 83, 88.

## P.

Palachwe 64.  
 Pangani 88.  
 Pankoy 22.  
 Patta 83, 88.  
 Pemba 82, 86, 88.  
 Peñon de Velez 18.  
 Pietermaritzburg 71.  
 Pondoland 60 63, 70.  
 Ponta Delgada 20.  
 Port Alice 89.  
 Port Louis 80.  
 Port Sa'id 2.  
 Porto Novo 35, 36, 37.  
 Porto Santo 20.  
 Porto Seguro 36.  
 Portuguese East Africa 77.  
 Portuguese Guinea 27.  
 Portuguese Lower Guinea  
 54.  
 Possession Island 57.  
 Povo grande 49.  
 Praslin 80.  
 Presidios 17.  
 Pretoria 74, 75.  
 Princes Island 46.  
 Providence 82.  
 Punta Barra 29.

## Q.

Qasr es-Sa'id 11.  
 Quillimane 76.  
 Quitta 30.

## R.

Rahanwin 94.  
 Rahat 93.

Raheita 91, 95.  
 Ramaquaban 66.  
 Râs 'Ali 91, 92.  
 Râs Dshibuti 91, 92, 93.  
 Râs Dumejra 91, 92.  
 Râs el-Kunâis 8.  
 Râs Kasâr 93.  
 Râs Tadjêr.  
 Réunion 81.  
 Rhodesia 65, 77.  
 Rif 15.  
 Rio Cassini 27.  
 Rio del Rey 38, 43.  
 Rio d'oro 13, 15, 17.  
 Rio Nuñez 26.  
 Kivières du Sud 21, 23, 25,  
 86.

Robert's-Port 32.  
 Rode Valley 60.  
 Rodriguez 80.  
 Rosebery 69.  
 Rosetta 2.  
 Roux Cape 10.  
 Rovuma River 67, 76, 83.  
 Royal Niger Company 38.  
 Ruanda 85, 87.  
 Rudolf Lake 97.  
 Rufisque 21.  
 Ruo 68.

## S.

Saadani 85.  
 Sabi 66.  
 Sagallo 91, 99.  
 Sahara 10, 12.  
 Sakalavas 78.  
 Sakota 97.  
 Salaga 34.  
 Saldanha Bay 61.  
 Saleh 16.  
 Salisbury 67, 77.  
 Salum 21.  
 Samory's Dominion 22.  
 Sanga River 42, 44, 47.  
 San Giacomo 29.  
 San Juan 45.  
 San Pietro River 26.  
 Sansane-Mangu 37.  
 Sansandig 21.  
 Santa Clara Cape 46.  
 Santa Cruz de Mar Pequeña  
 18.  
 Santa Cruz de Tenerife 19.

- Santa Lucia Bay 71.  
 Santa Maria 29.  
 São Lourenço 78. .  
 São Miguel 20.  
 São Paulo de Loanda 55.  
 São Thiago 20.  
 São Thomé 46.  
 Savi (Xavier) 36.  
 Say 13, 21, 39.  
 Scarcies 25.  
 Sebbe 35.  
 Secomdi 30.  
 Sedhiu 26.  
 Sefui 30.  
 Segú Sikoro 21.  
 Sella 8.  
 Semien 97.  
 Semio's Capital 47.  
 Semliki River 87, 88.  
 Semsen 93.  
 Senegal 21.  
 Senegambia 21.  
 Senna 76.  
 Sennaar 1, 6.  
 Seychelles 80.  
 Shari 42, 44.  
 Shashi-River 66.  
 Sherbro Island 29.  
 Shiré 68.  
 Shoa 91, 92, 94, 97, 98.  
 Shoshong 64.  
 Shotts 12.  
 Shott el-dsherid 10.  
 Shott el-Gharbi 11.  
 Sidâma 97, 98.  
 Sidshilmessa 15.  
 Sierra Leone 21, 29.  
 Sinai Peninsula 2.  
 Sinu 33.  
 Slave Coast 31.  
 Snussijâ 1.  
 Sofala 76.  
 Sokna 8.  
 Sókoto 23, 39.  
 Sokotra 89.  
 Solûm 1.  
 Somali 2, 87, 89, 91.  
 Somalia Italiana 93.  
 South African Republic 71,  
 73, 75.  
 St. Brandon 80.  
 St. Denis 81.  
 St. Helena 57.  
 St. Louis 21, 24.  
 St. Marie 78, 79.  
 St. Mary of Bathurst 29.  
 St. Paul 81.  
 St. Pierre 82.  
 St. Pietro River 25, 32.  
 Stefanie Lake 97.  
 Stellaland 64.  
 Suâkin 2.  
 Soudân (Sudan) 1, 2, 5.  
 Sudân, Central 41.  
 Suez 2.  
 Suez Canal 2.  
 Sumbo 76.  
 Sus 15.  
 Swasiland 71, 74.  
 Sweet River 31.
- T.**
- Tadshura 91, 92.  
 Tafilelt 15.  
 Taiserbo 8.  
 Taka 1, 6.  
 Takale 6.  
 Tamâneb 6.  
 Tamarida 91.  
 Tamatave 78, 79.  
 Tana River 83.  
 Tanganyika 50, 68, 69.  
 Tangiers 16.  
 Tarabulûs 7.  
 Tati Gold District 66.  
 Tazzerrult 15.  
 Tchertcher 97.  
 Tebessa 10.  
 Tegeri 8.  
 Tel el-kebir 4.  
 Temâneb 7.  
 Tembuland 60.  
 Tete 76.  
 Tetuân 16.  
 Tibati's Dominion 44.  
 Tibesti 8.  
 Tidikelt 13.  
 Tieba's Dominion 24.  
 Tigré 95, 97.  
 Timbuctoo 23.  
 Todshié 34, 35.  
 Togo 34.  
 Togoland 33.  
 Tokar 7.
- Tombo 27.  
 Tongoland 71.  
 Tongola River 71.  
 Transkei 60.  
 Transvaal 62, 67, 73.  
 Trarza 23.  
 Tripolis (Tripoli) 7.  
 Tristan da Cunha 56.  
 Tristão 27.  
 Trois Frères-Islands 80.  
 Tromelin 82.  
 Tshad Lake Countries 41.  
 Tshagos-Islands 80.  
 Tshambesi 69.  
 Tshantyoan 34.  
 Tshinde 69.  
 Tshiloango 47.  
 Tshobe-River 2, 58, 63, 65.  
 Tu 8.  
 Tuareg 7.  
 Tuât 13, 15.  
 Tugela 70.  
 Tuggurt 14.  
 Tunghi 63.  
 Tunis 10.
- U.**
- Uano 92.  
 Ubangi 9, 47, 49, 52.  
 Uelle 52.  
 Uganda 86, 87, 88.  
 Uhehe 85.  
 Ukami 83.  
 Ukerewe 85.  
 Ulala 25, 51.  
 Uled Embarek 19, 24.  
 Ulundi 62.  
 Umba River 83, 88.  
 Umsalekaze 62.  
 Uniamwesi 85.  
 Unioro (Unyoro) 87.  
 Upingtonia 50, 59.  
 Urna 25, 51.  
 Usagara 83, 85.  
 Usambara 85.  
 Useguha 83.  
 Usige 84.  
 Usoga 87.  
 Usukuma 85.  
 Usutu River 71.  
 Uthali 93.

V.	Wagadugu 25, 34, 37.	X.
Vaal 62, 71.	Wahadu 89.	Xavier (Savi) 36.
Vassao 30.	Walfish Bay 56, 59.	Xesibe 60.
Velez de la Gomera 18.	Wallamo 97.	
Victoria (Cameroon) 45.	Wanga 86.	Y.
Victoria Nyanza 84, 85, 89.	Wanjanga 8.	Yetzoo 91.
Victoria Republic 71.	Wargla 12, 14.	Yola (Jola) 38, 43.
Volta 21, 30, 34, 35.	Warsheik 83, 84, 96.	Yoruba (Joruba) 31, 35.
Vryheid 63, 74.	War Singeli 90.	
	Wébi Shebéli 97.	
	Wesân 17.	Z.
W.	West African Colonies 28	Zambesi 52, 58, 63, 69.
Wadaï 5, 8, 41.	West African Settlements 28.	Zambesia 65.
Wadi Draa 15.	West Griqualand 60, 62	Zanzibar 82
Wadi Nogâl 89.	Whydah (Weyda, Uida) 35, 36.	Zejla (Zeyla) 89, 92.
Wadi Sûf 14.	Windhoek 59.	Ziquincior 27.
Wadi Sûs 15.	Winnebac 30.	Zomba 69.
Wadis River 15.	Witu 83, 86	Zululand 70, 71, 74.
Wad Râs 18.	Wizard 82.	Zumbo 65.
	Wurno 40.	

### Errata corrigé :

Pag. :	Line :	Erratum :	Read :
VII (VIII) 14th, 28th, 31st (11th)	Portugese	Portuguese.	
6	27th	Bogo	Bogos.
31	18th	1873	1872—1874.
32	11th	1862, March 3rd	1861, August 6th.
34	17th	15th	5th.
40	6th	Adamua	Adamawa
57	2nd	since 1879	12th March 1878.
60	16th	1871	22nd February 1878.
74	20th	February	January.
77	5th	1878	1875, 24th July.
82	9th	24	21.
85	11th	1st	25th.
88	24th	Kumayu	Kismayu.
88	last	June 18th	August 27th
91	3rd	September	October.
95	28th	Theodoro	Theodoros.



# Oriental Catalogue No. X.

OF

## NEW & SECOND-HAND BOOKS

ON SALE BY

### KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.

LIMITED,

*Publishers and Booksellers to the India Office, British Museum,  
the Indian Government, etc.,*

PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD,  
LONDON.

→\* Contents. \*←

## BOOKS ON AFRICAN PHILOLOGY,

VIZ.:

	PAGE
POLYGLOTS, COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY, AND GENERAL WORKS ON AFRICAN LINGUISTIC	1-3
DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, READING BOOKS FOR THE PRINCIPAL AFRICAN LANGUAGES, viz.: Aduma, Affar, Agau, Agni, Akra, Amharic, Arabic (Algerian, Egyptian, Morocco, Tunisian, and Zanzibar dialects), Ashanti, Bambara, Barea, Bari, Bechuana, Bedauye, Beidawi, Benguela, Berber, Bilin, Bishari, Bornu, Bubi, Bullom, Bunda, Cape Dutch, Dahomey, Denka, Dualla, Efik, Ewe, Falasha, Fan, Ferdinandian, Fiote, Fulah, Galla, Ghat, Giryama, Grebo, Harari, Hansa, Herero, Ibo, Idzo, Igbira, Kabail, Kaffa, Kaguru, Kamba, Kavirondo, Kibangi, Kilolo, Kimaassa, Kisukuma, Kiteke, Kitiku, Ki-Pokomo, Kongo, Kunama, Kwafi, Libyan, Luba, Luganda, Makua, Malagasy, Mande, Masai, Mashona, Matabele, Mauritius, Musuk, Mwamba, Nagoe, Namaqua, Ngoni, Niam-Niam, Nika, Nubian, Nupe, Nyamwezi, Nyanja, Oshikuanjama, Pongwe, Quara, Ronga, Sagara, Saho, Shambala, Somali, Soso, Swahili, Taita, Temne, Teneriffe, Tigré, Tumbuka, Umbundu, Vai, Wolof, Xosa, Yao, Yoruba, and Zulu-Kafir	3-20
AND	
A SELECT STOCK OF BOOKS ON AFRICA— HISTORY, INDUSTRY, TRAVELS, ETC.	21-22

☛ All Books sent post-free without extra charge, if cash is sent with the order. Librarians who prefer to send their orders through their Book-seller or London Agent, instead of to us, are kindly requested to forward duplicate orders direct to us.

All Books will be sent post-free without extra charge, if cash accompanies the order.

*Books on Africa.*

(Continued from page 29.)

- PAULITSCHKE** (P.). Beiträge zur Ethnographie und Anthropologie der Somäl, Galla, und Harari. 105 pp. text, with 40 photo-lithographic plates and a map, folio. 1888. £1 5s.
- Ethnographie Nordost-Afrika's. Die materielle Cultur der Danâkil, Galla, und Somäl. 338 pp. with 76 illustrations on 25 plates, and a map. Large 8vo. cloth. 1893. £1 3s.
- PETHERICK** (J., F.R.G.S.). Egypt, the Soudan, and Central Africa, with explorations from Khartoum on the White Nile to the regions of the Equator, being sketches from Sixteen Years' Travel. With map. xii. and 482 pp. cloth. 1861. (Pub. 16s.) 7s. 6d.
- PFEFFER** (G.). Die Fische Ost-Africa's. 726 pp. with plates, large 8vo. 1897. 7s. 6d.
- REINDORF** (C. C.). History of the Gold Coast and Asante, based on traditions and historical facts, comprising a period of more than three centuries, from about 1500 to 1860. 356 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1895. 9s. net.
- ROWLEY** (Rev. H.). The Story of the Universities Mission to Central Africa, from its commencement, under Bishop Mackenzie, to its withdrawal from the Zambesi. With portraits, maps, and illustrations. xii. and 493 pp. large 8vo. cloth. 1866. (Pub. £1 1s.) 5s.
- SARTORIUS** (E.). Three months in the Soudan. x. and 259 pp. with plates, large 8vo. cloth. 1885. (Pub. 14s.) 7s.
- SPENCER** (H.). Descriptive Sociology; or, Groups of Sociological Facts classified and arranged.
- Vol. IV. African races, compiled and abstracted by Prof. D. Duncan. 29 tables and 47 pp. text, folio. 1875. 16s.
- TRANSACTIONS** of the Chemical and Metallurgical Society in Johannesburg (S.A.R.). Vol. I. in the Press.—Orders booked.
- TRANSACTIONS** of the Geological Society of South Africa in Johannesburg (S.A.R.). 8vo.
- Vol. I. (1896). 6s.
- Vol. II. in ten parts (1896). 15s.
- Contains a number of technical papers on the Geology and Mining in South Africa, written by practical experts.—The continuation can be supplied to order.
- WAUTERS** (A. J.) and **BUYL** (Ad.). Bibliographie du Congo, 1880-95. Catalogue Méthodique de 3800 ouvrages, brochures et cartes. 356 pp. 8vo. 1895. 7s. 6d.
- WELWITSCH** (Fr.). Catalogue of the African Plants (especially from Angola) collected by him in 1853-61. Edited by W. P. Hiern.
- Vol. I. containing the *Dicotyledons*, and 336 pp. 8vo. 1896. 7s. 6d.

☛ All Catalogues sent post-free and gratis to our regular Customers. All others are requested to send 6d. in stamps with demand for each Catalogue, which amount will be deducted from the first Order.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

SEPTEMBER, 1897.

## AFRICAN LANGUAGES.

POLYGLOTTIS, COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY, &c.

- BARTH** (H.). Collection of Vocabularies of Central-African Languages, in English and German. *First Part.*—Larger Vocabularies of the Kanuri-, Teda-, Hausa-, Fulfilde-, Sonjai-, Lógonè-, Wándalà-, Bágrimma-, and Mába-Languages. Introductory Remarks, Chap. 1-6. Pronouns. Particles. Numerals. Verbs. *Second Part.*—Introductory Remarks, Chap. 7-12. Analysis of the Fulfilde-, Sonjai-, Lógonè-, Wándalà-, Bágrimma-, and Mába-Languages. *Third Part.*—Nouns. pp. ccxxxiv. and 295. Royal 8vo. 1862-66. (Pub. £1 10s.) £1.
- BLEEK** (W. H. T., PH.D.). A Comparative Grammar of South African Languages. 2 parts in one volume. pp. xxii. and 322. Post 8vo. cloth. 1862-69. (Pub. £2 2s.) 15s.  
Part I., Phonology; Part II., The Concord. Section I., The Noun. All that is published.
- CECCHI** (A.). *Da Zeila alle frontiere del Caffa.* Vol. III. 636 pp. 8vo. 1887. 15s.  
CONTENTS.—pp. 1-100, E. Viterbo, Grammatica della lingua Oromonica; pp. 101-398, E. Viterbo, Vocabulario Oromonica-Italiano e Italiano-Oromonica; pp. 399-456, A. Cecchi, Apunti grammaticali e vocaboli della lingua Kaffeccio; pp. 457-461, A. Cecchi, Vocaboli della lingua Giangero; pp. 462-468, A. Cecchi, Vocaboli della lingua Adija; pp. 469-484, A. Cecchi, Note grammaticali e vocaboli della lingua Ciaha; pp. 485-490, A. Cecchi, Vocaboli e modi di dire della lingua Afar; pp. 491-501, A. Cecchi, Novelle raccolte in lingua Italiana.
- CLARKE** (J.). Specimens of Dialects. Short Vocabularies of [246] Languages and Notes of Countries and Customs in Africa. 8vo. pp. v. and 104. 1849. 3s.
- CUST** (R. N.). *Les langues de l'Afrique*, traduit de l'anglais par L. de Milloué. pp. 126, small 8vo. paper covers. "Bibliothèque elzévirienne." 1885. 2s. 6d.
- A Sketch of the Modern Languages of Africa, accompanied by a Language Map, by E. E. Ravenstein. 2 vols. Post 8vo. cloth, pp. xvi. and 288, and viii. and 278, with 31 autotype portraits of African missionaries and scholars. 1883. Out of print. £1 1s. net.  
Forms a volume of Trübner's Oriental Series.
- Essay on the Progress of African Philology up to the year 1893. 48 pp. 8vo. 1893. 1s. 6d.
- FAIDHERBE**, *Langues sénégalaises: wolof, arabe, hassania, soninké, sérère: notions grammaticales, vocabulaires et phrases.* 226 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1887. 7s. 6d.

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

- FREY** (Col.). L'Annamite, mère des langues, Communauté d'origine, des races Celtiques, Sémitiques, Soudanaises et de l'Indo-Chine. With 3 maps. 8vo. 1892. 5s.
- III. Origine des Mandé, Peulho, Fellahs, Berbères, Maures, de Galoix, etc.  
 VII. Similitudes de mots annamites et de mots des dialectes de la côte des Esclaves. VIII. Id. des dialectes de l'Afrique centrale.
- GHEYN** (J. van den). La langue rongalaise et les idiomes bantous d'après le récent ouvrage du père Torrend. 29 pp. 8vo. 1892. 1s. 6d.
- GREGORIO** (G. de). Cenni di glottologia Bantu (Sud-Africana). pp. 152, 8vo. 1882. 4s.  
 A second-hand copy with numerous MSS. notes, 3s.
- GUIRAUDON** (Th. Gr. de). Notes de linguistique Africaine: Les Puls. 55 pp. 8vo. Vienne, 1887. 2s.
- JACOTTET** (E.). Etudes sur les langues du Haute-Zambèze, Textes originaux recueillis et traduits en français et précédés d'une esquisse grammaticale.  
 Vol. I. Grammaire soubiya et louye. xxxvii. and 133 pp. 8vo. 1896. 6s.
- JOHNSON** (H.) and **CHRISTALLER** (J.). Vocabularies of the Niger and Gold Coast, West Africa. 34 pp. 12mo. limp cloth. 1886. 1s. 6d.  
 Includes Yoruba, Nupi, Kakanda, Igbira, Igara, Ibo, Ga and Obutu.
- KOELLE** (S. W.). Polyglotta Africana; or, Comparative Vocabulary of nearly three hundred words and phrases in more than one hundred distinct African Languages. Folio, cloth, pp. 24 and 188. 1854. £1 1s.
- KOLBE** (F. W.). A Language Study based on Bantu; or, an inquiry into the laws of root-formation, the original plural, the sexual dual, and the principles of word-comparison. With tables illustrating the primitive pronominal system restored in the African Bantu family of speech. pp. viii. and 97, with 4 tables. Post 8vo. cloth. 1888. 6s.
- KRAPF** (J. L.). Vocabulary of Six East-African Languages (Kienäheli, Kinika, Kikamba, Kipokómo, Kihian, Kigalla). pp. x. and 64. 4to. cloth. 1850. 5s.
- LAST** (J. T.). Polyglotta Africana Orientalis; or, a Comparative Collection of 250 Words and Sentences in 48 Languages and Dialects spoken south of the Equator, and Additional Words in 19 Languages, with Linguistic Map. 8vo. cloth, pp. xii. and 239. 1885. 4s.
- LEMAIRE** (Ch.). Vocabulaire pratique français-anglais, zanzibarite (swahili), fiote, kibangi-irébou, mougo, bangalas. 48 pp. 8vo. 1894. 2s. 6d.
- LORD'S PRAYER** (The) in three hundred languages, comprising the leading languages and their principal dialects throughout the world, with the places where spoken. With a preface, by the late Dr. R. Rost. Second edition. 100 pp. 4to. cloth. 1891. 10s. 6d.
- MASQUERAY** (E.). Comparaison d'un vocabulaire du dialecte des Zenaga du Sénégal avec les vocabulaires correspondants des dialectes des Chawia et des Beni Mzab. 61 pp. 8vo. 1879. 3s.
- MÜLLER** (Fr.). Linguistischer Theil der Reise der Österreichischen Fregatte Novara um die Erde in 1857-59. 357 pp. 4to. cloth. 1867. 12s. 6d.  
 pp. 1-71 contain the Africanische Sprachen, Hottentotisch, Bantu und Hamitische Sprachen.
- Die Sprachen Basa, Grebo und Kru im westlichen Afrika. 20 pp. 8vo. 1877. 1s.
- Die aequatoriale Sprachfamilie in Central-Afrika. 2 parts, 22 pp. 8vo. 1889. 1s. 6d.

- OUTLINE of a Vocabulary of a few of the Principal Languages of Western and Central Africa, compiled for the use of the Niger Expedition. Square 8vo. (oblong), cloth, pp. vii. and 213. 1841. Out of print. Scarce. 7s. 6d. This vocabulary comprises the Mandingo, Bambarra, Fanti, and Ashanti and Wolof languages.
- SCHLEICHER (A. W.). *Afrikanische Petrefacten. Ein Versuch die grammatischen Bildungen und Formwurzeln der Afrikanischen Sprachen durch Sprachvergleichung festzustellen.* 93 pp. 8vo. 1891. 3s.
- SEIDEL (A.). *Praktische Grammatiken der Hauptsprachen Deutsch-Südwestafrikas: Nama, Otyiherero und Oshindonga.* In one volume. 180 pp. 12mo. cloth. No date (1892). 2s. 6d.  
Each grammar contains elementary rules for beginners, reading matter, and a vocabulary.
- SHAW (A. Downes). *A Pocket Vocabulary of the Ki-Swahili, Ki-Nyika, Ki-Taita, and Ki-Kamba Languages. Also a Brief Vocabulary of the Kibwyo Dialect. Collected by Archdeacon Farler.* Small 8vo. cloth, pp. v. 204. 1885. 6s.
- STEERE (E., LL.D.). *Short Specimens of the Vocabularies of three Unpublished African Languages (Gindo, Zaramo, and Angazidja).* Small 8vo. sewed, pp. 21. 1869. 1s.
- TORREND (J.). *Comparative Grammar of the South-African Bantu languages, comprising those of Zanzibar, Mozambique, the Zambesi, Kafirland, Benguela, Angola, the Congo, the Ogowe, the Cameroons, the Lake Region, &c.* 336 pp. royal 8vo. cloth. 1891. £1 5s.  
Detailed prospectus sent post-free on demand.
- WATSON (C. M.). *Comparative Vocabularies of the Languages spoken at Suakin: Arabic, Hadendoa, Beni-Amer.* 16 pp. 4to. 1888. 2s. 6d.

#### ADUMA.

- DAHIN. *Vocabulaire adouma-français et français-adouma.* 72 pp. 8vo. 1895. 6s.

#### AFFAR or ADALI (AN ABYSSINIAN DIALECT).

- COLIZZA (Giov.). *Lingua Afar. Nel Nord-Est dell' Africa. Grammatica, testi e Vocabolario.* pp. xii. and 153, 8vo. 1886. 6s.
- REINISCH (L.). *Die Afar-Sprache mit Gesprächen und Wörterbuch.* 3 parts, 112, 124, and 82 pp. 8vo. 1885-87. 5s. 6d.

#### AGAU (JEWISH DIALECT IN ABYSSINIA).

- HALÉVY (J.). *Essai sur la langue Agau; le dialecte des Falachas (Juifs d'Abyssinie).* 33 pp. 8vo. 1873. 2s. 6d.
- WALDMEIER (Th.). *Wörtersammlung aus der Agausrache.* 29 pp. 8vo. 1868. 2s. 6d.

#### AGNI.

- JEAND'HEUR (F.). *Vocabulaire français-agni.* 61 pp. 8vo. 1893.

#### AKRA or GA (GOLD COAST).

- CHRISTALLER (J. G.) and SCHOPF (J.). *Primer in the Gā or Akra Language.* (New edition.) 8vo. viii. and 48 pp. 1892. 1s. 6d.

- CHRISTALLER (J. G.), LOCHER (Ch. W.), and ZIMMERMANN (T.).** A Dictionary of English, Tshi (Asante), Akra, Tshi (Chwee), comprising, as Dialects, Akán (Asánté, Akém, Akuapém), and Fanté; Akra (Accra), connected with Adangme, &c. 8vo. pp. xxiv. and 275. 1874. Out of print. 7s. 6d.
- CHRISTALLER (J. G.) and BOHNER (H.).** Übungen in der Akra oder Ga-Sprache. 103 pp. 8vo. 1890. 2s. 6d.
- CONTENTS.**—I. Kurze Sprachlehre. II. Sätze aus der Umgangssprache des täglichen Lebens.
- ZIMMERMANN (J.).** A Grammatical Sketch of the Akra or Gā Language, with a Vocabulary and an Appendix on the Adanme Dialect. 2 vols. 8vo. boards, pp. xvi. and 203, and vii. and 464. 1858. 10s. 6d.

**AMHARIC (ABYSSINIA).**

- D'ABBADIE (A.).** Dictionnaire de la langue Amharina. xvii. and 1336 pp. 8vo. 1881. £2 2s.
- GUIDI (Ig.).** Grammatica elementare della lingua Amariña. 2nd Edition, 63 pp. 8vo. 1892. 5s.
- Sulle coniugazioni del verbo Amarico. 18 pp. 8vo. 1893. 1s. 6d.
- ISENBERG (Ch. W.).** Grammar of the Amharic Language. pp. 184, royal 8vo. cloth. 1842. 12s.
- MONDON-VIDAILHET (C.).** Manuel pratique de langue Abyssine (Amharique). 201 pp. post 8vo. 1891. 8s.
- PIANO (F.).** Raccolta delle frasi più usuali tradotte dall' Italiano in Amarico. 2nd Edition, revised and corrected. 125 pp. 12mo. 1887. 2s.
- PRAETORIUS (F.).** Die Amharische Sprache. In two parts. 523 pp. 4to. 1878-79. £1 10s.

**ARABIC (ALGERIAN DIALECT).**

- BELKASSEM (Ben Sedira).** Cours pratique de langue arabe. 3rd Edition. 1888. 3s. 6d.
- Dictionnaire français-arabe et arabe-français de la langue parlée en Algérie. 4th Edition. 12mo. pp. lxiv. and 928, cloth. 1882-86. 5s. each volume.
- Manuel épistolaire de langue arabe. 8vo. 1894. 5s.
- CONTENTS.**—Lettres et mss. divers avec transcription, notes et vocabulaire.
- Petit dictionnaire arabe-français (dialect algérien). xii. and 608 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1882. 5s.
- Dialogues français-arabes, recueil des phrases les plus usuelles de la langue parlée en Algérie. 3rd Edition. 32mo. pp. vii. and 370. 1889. 3s.
- Cours de littérature arabe, recueil de versions littéraires tirées du Mostatref, des Mille et une nuits, des fables de Bidpai, des prairies d'or, &c., munies de voyelles. 2nd Edition. 368, 364, and xiv. pp. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 10s.
- Added are towards 500 verses and an Arabic-French vocabulary of all words contained in the volume.

- BRESNIER.** Chrestomathie arabe: Lettres, actes et pièces diverses avec la traduction française en regard, accompagnée de notes et d'observations suivies d'une notice sur les successions musulmanes et d'une concordance inédite des calendriers grégorien et musulman. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 12s.
- BRESNIER.** Anthologie arabe élémentaire, choix de maximes et de textes variés, la plupart inédits, accompagnés d'un vocabulaire arabe-français. Small 8vo. 5s.
- BUSSY (R. de).** Dictionnaire français-arabe de la langue parlée en Algérie. 3rd Edition. 12mo. 1894. 3s. 6d.
- DELAPORTE (J. H.).** Guide de la conversation arabe-française, avec le mot à mot et la prononciation interlinéaire figurée en caractères français. 3rd Edition. Oblong 8vo. 7s.
- DELAPORTE.** Cours de versions arabes (idiome d'Alger) contenant les fables de Lokman et les fables choisies d'Esopé. 3rd Edition. 8vo. 5s.
- DUCRET (E.).** Arabic Copy-books. A series of 8 progressive parts on ruled writing paper, with models at the top of each page. 4to. 2s. 6d.  
They show only the Algerian handwriting.
- DUMONT (M. X.).** Guide de la lecture des manuscrits arabes. 107 pp. royal 8vo. 1842. 5s.  
A collection of autographed Arabic private and business letters, contracts, invoices, prayers, stories, etc., with French translation.
- EIDENSCHENK.** Mots usuels de la langue arabe. 296 pp. 8vo. 1897. 4s.
- HOUDAS et DELPHIN.** Recueil de lettres arabes manuscrites. 4to. 5s.
- LAUNE.** Manuel français-arabe ou recueil d'actes administratifs, judiciaires et sous seings privés. Arabic text with French translation. Small 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- MACHUEL (L.).** Une première année d'arabe. 2nd Edition. 136 pp. 8vo. boards. 1892. 2s.  
——— Methode pour l'étude de l'arabe parlé (idiome algérien). 4th Edition. 18mo. pp. xvi. and 456. 1888. 5s.  
——— Manuel de l'arabisant ou recueil de pièces arabes.  
Part I. Lettres administratives, judiciaires, politiques, etc. Small 8vo. boards. 6s.  
Part II. Actes divers pourvus de toutes les voyelles. Small 8vo. boards. 6s.
- MOULIERAS (A.).** Manuel algérien. Grammaire, chrestomathie et lexique. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 288. 1888. 5s.

#### ARABIC (EGYPTIAN DIALECT).

- BERNARD (H.).** Vocabulaire français-egyptien. 3rd Edition. 12mo. 1877. 3s. 6d.  
In Roman characters only.
- CAMERON (D. A.).** Arabic-English Vocabulary (Egyptian vernacular dialect). 319 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1892. 12s.  
The pronunciation of the Arabic words is given in Roman characters.
- GAD (J.).** Dictionnaire français-arabe des termes judiciaires administratives et commerciaux. 1590 pp. 2 vols. 4to. 1894. £2.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

**GREEN (A. O.).** A Practical Arabic Grammar.

Part I. 3rd Edition. Contains the whole accidence and a short syntax. Every lesson contains reading exercises, with interlinear pronunciation in Roman characters, conversations, English and Arabic exercises, vocabulary, &c. 198 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1893. 7s. 6d.

Part II. 3rd Edition, enlarged and revised. Forms a key to Part I. The English exercises are rendered into colloquial Egyptian-Arabic, and the stories into a more literary style, with the word points and diacritical marks added; a collection of newspaper extracts and telegrams, letters and manuscripts; and an English-Arabic vocabulary of 3000 words and an Arabic-English vocabulary of 1500 words; and a comparative table of classical and modern Arabic forms and expressions for the use of advanced students. 290 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1893. 10s. 6d.

The first two editions of this second part were printed by the British Government and never sold to the public.

**HABEICHE (J. J.).** Dictionnaire français-arabe, pour le dialecte égyptien. 2nd Edition. 960 pp. 8vo. boards. 1896. £1 1s.

The Arabic words are given in Arabic characters only.

**HARFOUCHE (J.).** Le drogman arabe ou guide pratique de l'arabe parlé en caractères romains pour la Syrie, l'Égypte et la Palestine. 354 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894. 5s.

L'ouvrage contient un abrégé de grammaire, un vocabulaire, des dialogues variés, des arabismes et des proverbes.

**HARTMANN (M.).** Arabischer Sprachführer für Reisende. 2nd Edition, revised, 16mo. limp roan. 1895. 5s.

Arabic in the Syrian and Egyptian dialects (in English characters).

It forms a volume of the "Meyer's Sprachführer" Series.

**KASSAB and HAMMAM.** Arabic-English Dictionary. 803 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1888. 10s.

Contains words of the Egyptian and Syriac spoken dialects, as well as those of the written classical language.

**LANSING (T. G.).** Arabic Manual. 2nd Edition. xv. and 194 pp. royal 8vo. cloth. 1891. 12s.

The work is divided in four parts, viz., the Orthography, Etymology, Paradigms, and a Chrestomathy [containing some parts of the Genesis and Koran in Arabic, with a transliteration, translation, and a vocabulary].

**MANTELL (A. M.).** Arabic-English Dictionary of Military Terms. 72 pp. royal 8vo. 1886. 3s.

The English-Arabic part is out of print.

**MARCEL (J. J.).** Dictionnaire français-arabe des dialectes vulgaires d'Alger, d'Égypte, de Tunis et du Maroc. 5th Edition, revised and corrected. pp. xv. and 584. 1885. 7s. 6d.

**NAKHLAH (Yakoub).** New Manual of English and Arabic conversation. 217 pp. small 8vo. 1874. 4s.

In Arabic and Roman characters.

**PALMER (The late E. H.).** Arabic Manual, comprising a condensed Grammar of both the classical and modern Arabic, reading lessons and exercises with analyses, and an English-Arabic vocabulary of useful words. 3rd Edition. 315 pp. 12mo. bound. 1891. 7s. 6d.

**PIZZI (T.).** Piccolo manuale dell'arabo vulgare d'Egitto con temi da tradursi dall'arabo in Italiano e dall'Italiano in arabo con vocabolario del terni. pp. 192, 16mo. 1886. 2s. 6d.

- PLUNKETT** (G. T.). English-Arabic Vocabulary, compiled for the use of English residents and travellers in Egypt. 108 pp. 12mo. 1886. 2s. 6*d.*  
It contains 3650 words, including many technical terms required by military men, engineers, builders, travellers on the Nile, &c. In Roman characters only.
- PROBST** (F.). Aegyptischer Sprachführer im aegyptischen Dialect (Grammatik, arab-deutsch und deutsch-arab Vocubular, Gespräche). 280 pp. post 8vo. bound. 1894. 5s.
- SEIDEL** (A.). Praktisches Handbuch der arabischen Umgangssprache aegyptischen Dialectes mit zahlreichen Übungsstücken und einem ausführlichen arabo-deutschem Wörterbuch. 310 pp. 8vo. 1894. (New issue of 1896.) 10s. 6*d.*  
Printed in Roman characters only.
- SPIRO** (S.). Arabic-English Vocabulary of the colloquial Arabic of Egypt, containing the vernacular idioms and expressions, slang phrases, &c., used by the native Egyptians. 661 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1895. 25s.  
All Arabic words are printed in Arabic and Roman characters.
- SPITTA-BEY**. Grammatik des Vulgaer-Dialectes Ægyptens. xxxi. and 519 pp. royal 8vo. cloth. 1880. £1 6s.
- STACE** (E. V.). - English-Arabic Vocabulary for the use of Students for the Colloquial. 218 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1893. 12s.  
Forms the counterpart to "Cameron's Arabic-English Vocabulary." The Arabic words are printed in Arabic characters.
- THIMM** (C. A.). Egyptian Arabic self-taught, for the practical use of travellers, a.o. 70 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1897. 2s. 6*d.*
- TIEN** (A.). Manual of Colloquial Arabic, comprising practical rules for learning the language, vocabulary, dialogue, letters, and idioms, &c., in English and Arabic. New and revised edition. 419 pp. 12mo. 1891. 7s. 6*d.*  
All Arabic words are printed in Arabic types, with their pronunciation in Roman characters.
- Egyptian, Syrian, and North African Handbook. 176 pp. 12mo. 1882. 4s.  
A simple phrasebook in English and Arabic for the use of the British forces, civilians, and residents in Egypt. [In Roman characters only.]
- VOLLERS** (Dr. K.). Lehrbuch der ägypto-arabischen Umgangssprache mit Uebungen und einem Glossar. xf. and 231 pp. post 8vo. 1890. Cloth, 7s. 6*d.* In wrapper, 6s. 6*d.*
- Grammar of the modern Egyptian Arabic, with exercises, reading lessons, and glossaries. Translated into English by F. C. Burkitt. 276 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1895. 10s. 6*d.*
- WORTABET** (J.) and **PORTER** (H.). English-Arabic and Arabic-English Dictionary, for the use of schools. 368 and 366 pp. 2 vols. bound in one, small 8vo. half-calf. 1894. 17s. 6*d.*
- WORTABET** (W. T.). Arabic-English Dictionary, compiled with the assistance of Rev. Dr. J. Wortabet and Prof. Harvey Porter. 2nd Edition, revised, 803 and 14 pp. 8vo. half-bound. 1893. £1 1s.  
To the classical words are added many modern words. A supplement contains words used especially in Egypt, and a list of military and technical terms employed by the Government Departments. The past and present future forms of the verb and the noun of action or noun of trilaterals in full are given.

## ARABIC (MOROCCO DIALECT).

AYUSO (D. F. G.). Gramática-árabe, método teórico práctico. 2nd Edition, corrected and enlarged. 146 pp. 8vo. 1883. 6s.

BALDWIN (C. W.). Dialogos españoles y arabigos. 12mo. cloth. 1893. 7s. 6d.

— English-Arabic Dialogues, for the use of students in Morocco. Revised and edited by W. Mackintosh. 115 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1893. 7s. 6d.

All Arabic words are printed in the Arabic character.

LERCHUNDI (Fr. José). Rudimentos del árabe vulgar que se habla en el imperio de Marruecos. 2nd Edition, enlarged and revised. xvi., 463, and 56 pp. 8vo. 1889. 15s.

CONTENTS.—I. Nociones preliminares, pp. 1-26; II. Del artículo, nombre y pronombre, pp. 27-174; III. Del verbo y del participio, pp. 175-330, &c.

— Vocabulario español-arábigo (Morocco dialect). 863 pp. 8vo. 1892. £1 1s.

LERCHUNDI Y SIMONET. Crestomatia arabigo-española, ó coleccion de fragmentos, históricos, geográficos y literarios relativos à la España árabe seguida de un vocabulario de todos los términos contenidos en dichos fragmentos. 2 vols. 8vo. 1881-82. 18s. 6d.

MEAKIN (J. G. B.). Morocco Arabic Series.

Vol. I. Morocco Arabic [Maghribin Arabic] Vocabulary and Grammar Notes. 256 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1891. 6s.

CONTENTS.—Introductory note and practical hints, pp. 1-16; Grammatical notes, pp. 17-39; English-Arabic vocabulary [in Roman characters only] classified according to subjects, and alphabetical English index to it, pp. 40-256.

Vol. II. English-Arabic Dialogues. See under "Baldwin."

SOCIN (A.). Zum arabischen Dialect von Marokko. 8vo. 1893. 3s.

## ARABIC (TUNISIAN DIALECT).

BEAUSSIER (M.). Dictionnaire pratique arabe-français, contenant tous les mots dans l'arabe parlé en Algérie et en Tunisie, ainsi que dans le style épistolaire, les pièces usuelles et actes judiciaires. 764 and 8 pp. 4to. cloth. 1887. £2.

STUMME (H.). Grammatik des tunesischen Arabisch nebst Glossar. 183 pp. 8vo. 1896. 9s.

## ARABIC (ZANZIBAR DIALECT).

MORITZ (B.). Sammlung arabischer Schriftstuecke mit einem Glossar. 136 pp. Arabic text and 22 Arabic photographed *fac-simile* plates. xxxiv. and 112 pp. in German. 8vo. cloth. 1892. 16s.

Forms Vol. IX. of the "Lehrbuecher des Seminars fuer orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin," and refers to the dialects of Zanzibar and of German East Africa.

## ASANTE or ASHANTI, FANTE, TSHI, OJI or OTSHI

(GUINEA COAST, WEST AFRICA).

CHRISTALLER (J. G.). A Grammar of the Asante or Fante Language called Tshi (Chwee, Twi), based on the Akuapem Dialect, with Reference to the other (Akan and Fante) Dialects. pp. xxiv. and 203, 8vo. cloth. 1875. 10s. 6d.

---

Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.

**CHRISTALLER** (J. G.). A Dictionary of the Asante or Fante Language called Tshi (Chwee, Twi). With a Grammatical Introduction and Appendices on the Geography of the Gold Coast. pp. xxviii. and 671, 8vo. cloth. 1881. £1.

**RIIS** (H. N.). Grammatical Outline of the Oji Language, with especial Reference to the Akwapim Dialect, and an Akwapim-English and English-Akwapim Vocabulary, together with a Collection of Proverbs of the Natives. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 276. 1854. (Pub. 10s.) 6s.

——— *Elemente des Akwapim Dialects der Odshi-Sprache, enthaltend grammatische Grundzüge und Wörtersammlung, nebst einer Sammlung von Sprichwörtern der Eingebornen.* pp. xviii. and 322, 8vo. cloth. 1853. 8s.

#### **BAMBARA (UPPER NIGER).**

**BINGER** (G.). *Essai sur la langue bambara, parlée dans le Kaarta et dans le Bélédougou, suivi d'un vocabulaire, avec une carte indiquant les contrées où se parle cette langue.* 12mo. pp. 133, cloth. 1886. 4s.

#### **BAREA**

(NEGRO DIALECT ON THE NUBIAN AND ABYSSINIAN FRONTIER).

**REINISCH** (L.). *Die Barea Sprache. Grammatik, Text, und Wörterbuch, nach den handschriftlichen Materialien von W. Munzinger.* 186 pp. 8vo. 1874. 6s.

#### **BARI (UPPER NILE BASIN).**

**MITTERRUTZNER** (J. C.). *Sprache der Bari. Grammatik, Text, und Wörterbuch.* 8vo. sewed, pp. xxv. and 261. 1867. 5s. Added is a small vocabulary of the Ngyang-Bara language, by Morlang.

**MÜLLER** (F.). *Die Sprache der Bari. Ein Beitrag zur Afrikanischen Linguistik.* 8vo. boards, pp. 84, interleaved. 1864. 1s. 6d.

CONTENTS.—Grammatik, Lesestücke, deutsch-bari und bari-deutsches Glossar.

#### **BECHUANA, or SECHUANA, or SOTHO, or SESUTO**

(A KAFFIR DIALECT).

**ARCHBELL** (J.). *Grammar of the Bechuana Language.* 8vo. boards. Very scarce. 1837. 15s.

**CRISP** (W.). *Notes towards a Secoana Grammar.* Second Edition. 8vo. pp. 104. 1886. 2s. 6d.

**ENDEMANN** (K.). *Versuch einer Grammatik des Sotho.* 201 pp. 8vo. 1876. 6s.

**JACOTTET** (E.). *Elementary sketch of the Se-Suto grammar.* 71 pp. 8vo. 1892. 5s.

**KRUGER** (F. H.). *Steps to learn the Sesuto language, comprising an elementary grammar, graduate exercises, and a short vocabulary.* 2nd Edition. 98 pp. 8vo. limp cloth. 1883. 5s.

**MABILLE** (A.). *Se-Suto-English and English-Se-Suto Vocabulary; and E. Jacottet, Elementary Sketch of the Se-Suto Grammar.* Two works bound in one volume. 487 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1893. 10s. 6d.

**BEDAUYE** (NORTH-EAST AFRICA).

REINISCH (L.). *Bedauye Sprache in Nordost-Africa.* 3 parts, 74, 80, and 204 pp. large 8vo. 1893-94. 6s.

— Wörterbuch der Bedauye Sprache. 365 pp. 8vo. 1895. 16s.

**BEIDAWI** (TRIBES OF THE NORTH-EASTERN SOUDAN).

HAIG (F. T.). *Tentative grammar of the Beidawi language, spoken by the tribes of the North-Eastern Soudan, with short vocabularies and seuteuces.* 79 pp. post 8vo. 1895. 3s.

**BENGUELA, or BENGÁ** (WEST AFRICA).

SALVADÓ Y COS (Rdo. P. F.). *Coleccion de Apuntes Preliminares sobre la Lengua Benga ó sea Introduccion á una Gramática de Este Idioma que se habla en la Isla de Corisco, Pueblos de Su Bahía é Islas Adyacentes.* pp. 148, 81. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 7s. 6d.

SCHUCHARDT (H.). *Ueber die Benguela-sprache.* Royal 8vo. pp. 14. 1883. 1s. 6d.

**BERBER** (NORTH AFRICA).

BASSET (R.). *Notes de lexicographie berbère.* 4 parts. 62, 111, 88, and 100 pp. 8vo. 1883-88. 15s.

— *Le dialecte de Syouah : Grammaire et glossaire.* viii. and 98 pp. 8vo. 1890. 4s.

— *Loqmán Berbère : texte berbère et transcription avec glossaire et une étude sur la légende de Loqman.* 409 pp. 8vo. 1890. 10s.

— *Etudes sur les dialectes berbères.* xiv. and 165 pp. 8vo. 1894. 7s.

— *Etude sur la zenatia du Mزاب, de Ouargla et de l'Oued-Rir.* xv. and 274 pp. 8vo. 1892. 10s. 6d.

FAIDHERBE (Le Général). *Le Zénaga des tribus sénégalaises. Contribution à l'étude de la langue berbère.* Large 8vo. sewed, pp. 95. 1877. 4s. 6d.

GABELENTZ (G. von der). *Verwandtschaft des Baskischen mit den Berbersprachen Nord-Afrikas herausgegeben nach den hinterlassenen Manuscripten durch A. C. Graf von der Schulenburg.* 286 pp. text, with 4 tables. 8vo. 1894. 12s.

MERCIER (G.). *Le Chaouia de l'Aurès (dialecte de l'Ahmar-Khaddou) Etude grammaticale. Texte en dialecte chaouia.* 8vo. 1897. 3s. 6d.

RINN (L.). *Les origines berbères : études linguistiques et ethnologiques.* 8vo. 1889. 10s.

SIERAKOWSKI (A. Graf). *Das Schañi. Ein Beitrag zur berberischen Sprachen und Voelkerkunde.* 138 pp. 8vo. 1871. 4s.

VENTURE DE PARADIS. *Grammaire et dictionnaire abrégés de la langue berbère, revus par. P. Am. Jaubert.* pp. 235, 4to. 1844. 12s. 6d.

**BILIN, or BOGOS** (NORTH-EAST AFRICA).

REINISCH (L.). *Die Bilinsprache in Nordost-Africa mit einer Übersichtstabelle der Verbformen.* 138 pp. 8vo. 1882. 2s. 6d.

— *Die Bilin-Sprache.*

Vol. I. *Texte der Bilin-Sprache.* Royal 8vo. pp. viii. and 322. 1883. 10s.

Vol. II. *Wörterbuch der Bilin-Sprache.* Royal 8vo. pp. vi. and 426. 1887. £1.

**BISHARI (NUBIA).**

- ALMKVIST (H.).** Die Bishari-Sprache Tü-Bedäwie in Nordost-Afrika. 2 vols. 4to. sewed, pp. v. and 302 and vi. and 113. 1881-85. £1 10s.  
Contents: Vol. I. Grammatik.  
Vol. II. Bishari-deutsch und deutsch-bishari Wörterbuch.

**BORNU, or KANURI (CENTRAL AFRICA).**

- KOELLE (S. W.).** Grammar of the Bórnu or Kanuri Language. 8vo. cloth, pp. xix. and 326. 1854. 7s. 6d.  
—— African Native Literature or Proverbs, Tales, Fables, and Historical Fragments in the Kanuri or Bornu Language, to which are added a Translation of the above and a Kanuri-English Vocabulary. Royal 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 434. 1854. 7s. 6d.  
**NORRIS (E.).** Grammar of the Bornu or Kanuri Language. With Dialogues, Translations, and Vocabulary. 8vo. pp. 101. (Out of print and scarce.) 1853. 6s.

**BUBI (SPOKEN ON ISLAND OF FERNANDO Po).**

- JUANOLA (J.).** Primer paso á la lengua Bubí ó sea ensayo á una gramática de este idioma seguido de tres apéndices. 189 pp. 8vo. 1890. 6s.

**BULLOM**

(DIALECT OF MANDIGO VERNACULAR, NEAR SIERRA LEONE, WEST AFRICA).

- NYLANDER (Rev. G. R.).** Grammar and Vocabulary of the Bullom Language. pp. 159, small 8vo. cloth. 1814. 4s.

**BUNDA, KIMBUNDA, or ANGOLESE**

(LOANDA, WEST AFRICA).

- CANNECATTIM (F. B. M. de).** Collecção de observações grammaticaes sobre a lingua Bunda, ou Angolense. 4to. half-bound, pp. xx. and 218. 1805. 10s. 6d.  
—— The same. Second Edition. xviii. and 174 pp. 8vo. 1859. 7s. 6d.  
—— Dicionario da lingua Bunda, ou Angolense, explicada na Portugueza, e Latina. pp. ix. 720, 8vo. 1804. Bound up in one volume with F. B. M. DE CANNECATTIM, Collecção de observações grammaticaes sobre a lingua Bunda ou Angolense e dicionario abreviado da lingua Congueza. Second Edition. 174 pp. 8vo. 1859. £2 2s.  
**CASTAGNA (N.).** Di alcuni vocaboli e modi del vernacolo angolano col riscontro italiano o toscano. 32 pp. 12mo. 1891. 1s. 6d.  
**CHATELAIN (H.).** Grammatica elementar do Kimbundu ou lingua de Angola. xxiv. and 172 pp. 8vo. 1889. Out of print. 7s. 6d.  
**CORDEIRO DA MATTA.** Ensaio de dicionario kimbundu-portuguez. 174 pp. 8vo. 1893. 4s.  
**WOODWARD (W. H.).** Collections for a Handbook of the Boondei Language. 8vo. cloth. 1882. 4s.  
Contains grammatical notes and a Boondei-English and English-Boondei vocabulary.

**CAPE DUTCH.**

- MANSFELT** (N.). Proeve van een Kaapsch-Hollandsch idioticon met toelicht en opmerk. 8vo. 1884. 6s.  
**VILJOEN** (W. J.). Beiträge zur Geschichte der Cap Holländischen Sprache. 58 pp. 8vo. 1896. 2s.

**CHAMIR (ABYSSINIA).**

- REINISCH** (L.). Die Chamirsprache in Abessinien. 2 parts, 127 and 136 pp. with two large tables, 8vo. 1884. 5s.

**DAHOMEY (GUINEA COAST).**

- BONNAVENTURE** (A.). Eléments de grammaire de la langue fon ou dahoméenne, suivis d'un vocabulaire et d'un recueil de conversation. 74 pp. 8vo. 1895. 2s. 6d.  
**COURDIOUX** Dictionnaire de la langue Tog-bé ou dahoméenne. 8vo. Vol. I. Français-dahoméen. 1879. 4s. 6d.  
**DELAFOSSÉ** (M.). Manuel dahoméen cont. une grammaire, chrestomathie, et un dictionnaire français-dahoméen et dahoméen-français. 436 pp. 8vo. 1894. 10s.

**DENKA, or DINKA (KORDOFAN).**

- BELTRAME** (G.). Grammatica della lingua denka. 159 pp. 8vo. 1870. 5s.  
**MITTERRUTZNER** (J. C.). Die Dinka-Sprache in Central Afrika; kurze Grammatik, Text, und Dinkaisch-Deutsch-Italienisches Wörterbuch. 8vo. pp. 308. 1866. 7s.

**DUALLA (AT FERNANDO PO, WEST COAST).**

- CHRISTALLER** (J. G.). Handbuch der Dualla-Sprache. 216 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1892. 4s. 6d.  
**SEIDEL** (A.). Leitfaden zur Erlernung der Dualla-sprache in Kamerun mit Lesestücken und einem deutsch-dualla und dualla-deutschem Woerterbuche. 83 pp. large 8vo. 1892. 3s.

**EFIK (OLD CALABAR).**

*(Chief Language on the estuary of the Cross river).*

- GOLDIE** (H.). Principles of Efik grammar, with specimen of the language. 105 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1868. 3s. 6d.  
——— Dictionary of the Efik-English and English-Efik Language. 643 and 42 pp. 8vo. bound. N.D. £1 5s.

**EWÉ**

- (WESTERN PART OF THE SLAVE COAST, EAST OF THE RIVER VOLTA).  
**EWÉ-LESEFIBEL**. 64 pp. 8vo. boards. 1892. 2s.  
**EWÉ XECHLE-AGBALE**. Ewe Reading Book (Part II.) for the upper classes of the elementary schools of the North German Missionary Society. 160 pp. small 8vo. 1886.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

*African Languages—Falasha, Fan, Fernandian, Fiote, Fulah.* 13

- HENRICI (E.).** Lehrbuch der Ephe [Ewe] Sprache, Anlo-, Anecho-, und Dahome-Mundart, mit Glossar und einer Karte der Sklavenküste. xxi. and 270 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 16s.  
Forms Vol. VI. of the "Lehrbücher des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin."
- KNUESLI (A.).** Deutsch-Ewe Woerterbuch. 413 pp. lithographed 4to. cloth. 1892. £2.
- KNUESLI (J.).** Ewe-German-English Dictionary. 1084 pp. lithographed small 4to. cloth. 1891. £2.
- SCHLEGEL (J. B.).** Schlüssel zur Ewe-Sprache. Dargeboten in den grammatischen Grundzügen des Anlo-Dialekts derselben mit Woertersammlung, &c. 8vo. pp. xxiv. and 328. 1857. 5s.

**FALASHA (AN AGAU DIALECT, SPOKEN BY JEWS IN ABYSSINIA).**

- FLAD (M. J.).** Elements and Vocabulary of the Falasha language [spoken in Abyssinia]. Ed. by Dr. L. Krapf. 92 pp. 12mo. 1866. 1s. 6d.

**FAN (WESTERN AFRICA, SOUTH OF THE EQUATOR).**

- ZABALA (A. O.).** Vocabulary of the Fan language in Western Africa, with Spanish interpretations prepared on the spot. vi. and 34 pp. small 8vo. 1887. 2s.

**FERNANDIAN (ISLAND OF FERNANDO Po).**

- CLARKE (J.).** Introduction to the Fernandian Tongue. Part I. Second Edition. pp. viii. and 56. 8vo. cloth. 1848. 12s. 6d.

Contains a comparative table of ten primitive words in 232 African Dialects. Very scarce.

**FIOTE (FRENCH CONGO).**

- CARRIE.** Grammaire de la langue fiote, dialecte du Kakongo. 198 pp. small 8vo. 1890.
- USSEL.** Petite grammaire de la langue fiote, dialecte du Loango. 88 pp. small 8vo. 1888. 2s.
- VISSEQ (A.).** Grammaire fiote (langue du Congo). 64 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1889. 2s. 6d.
- Dictionnaire français-fiote (langue du Congo). 156 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1889. 3s.
- Dictionnaire français-fiote (dialecte du Kakongo). 145 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1890. 3s.
- Dictionnaire fiot-français. 211 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1890. 4s. 6d.

**FULAH or PULO, FULFULDE, FULDE, FOULE, POULE**

(SOUTH OF LOWER SENEGAL).

- FAIDHERBE.** Grammaire et vocabulaire de la langue poul à l'usage de voyageurs dans le Soudan. Second Edition. 165 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1882. 4s.
- GUIRAUDON (T. G. de).** Manuel de la langue foule, parlée dans la Sénégambie et le Soudan (containing a Grammar, Text, and a French-Foule Vocabulary). 144 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1894. 6s.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House, Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

**KRAUSE** (G. A.). Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Fülischen Sprache in Afrika. 108 pp. with language map, 8vo. 1884. 4s.

Forms Part I. of the "Mittheilungen der Riebeck'schen Niger Expedition."

**REICHARDT** (C. J.). Primer of the Fulde Language. 8vo. cloth. 1859. 1s. 6*d.*

**REICHARDT** (Ch. A. L.). Grammar of the Fulde Language, with an Appendix of some original Traditions and Portions of Scripture translated into Fulde, together with 8 chapters of the Book of Genesis. Translated by Dr. Baikie. 8vo. cloth, pp. xxiii. and 339. 1876. 12s. 6*d.*

**REICHARDT** (C. J.). Vocabulary of the Fulde Language, Fulde-English and English-Fulde. 357 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1878. 10s. 6*d.*

— Three original Fullah pieces in Arabic and Roman characters, with English translation. 62 pp. 8vo. 1859. 1s. 6*d.*

**GALLA, or OROMONA, or OROMONICA (EAST AFRICA.)**

**KRAPF** (L.). Vocabulary of the Galla Language. 43 pp. small 8vo. cloth, 1842. 1s. 6*d.*

**PRAETORIUS** (F.). Zur Grammatik der Gallasprache. viii. and 310 pp. 8vo. 1893. £1 2s. 6*d.*

**SCOLART** (L.). Grammatica oromona ossia della lingua parlata nel paese dei Gallas e nell' Abessinia. 63 pp. 8vo. 1885. 3s.

— Frasario e vocaboli in lingua Amara-Oromona-Araba-Inglese con le preghiere in Etiopico. 71 pp. lithographed, 12mo. 1888. 2s. 6*d.*

**VITERBO** (E.). Grammatica e dizionario della lingua Oromonica (Galla). 2 vols. 150 and 105 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1892. 5s.  
Vol. I. Galla-Italiano; vol. II. Italiano-Galla.

**GHÂT (A BANTU LANGUAGE SPOKEN NORTH OF MOMBASA).**

**KRAUSE** (G. A.). Proben der Sprache von Ghât in Sâhârâ. Mit Haussanischer und Deutscher Uebersetzung. Mit einer Kartenskizze und facsimiles. pp. 82 8vo. 1884. 4s.

Forms Part II. of the "Mittheilungen der Riebeck'schen Niger Expedition."

**GIRYAMA.**

**TAYLOR** (W. E.). Giryama Vocabulary and collections. xxvii. and 140 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1891. 6s. 6*d.*

**GREBO (IVORY COAST).**

**PAYNE** (J.). Dictionary of the Grebo language. 153 pp. small 8vo. 1867. Very scarce. 16s.

**HARARÎ**

(A SEMITIC LANGUAGE IN THE NORTH-EAST OF AFRICA).

**MULLER** (Fr.). Ueber die Harari-Sprache im oestlichen Afrika. 15 pp. 8vo. 1864. 1s. 6*d.*

**HAUSA (EAST OF THE NIGER).**

**DIRR** (A.). Manuel pratique de la langue haoussa, langue commerciale du Soudan, avec exercices gradués, une chrestomathie et vocabulaire et une préface par le commandant Monteil. 140 pp. 12mo. 1895. 5s.

- LE ROUX** (J. M.). Essai de dictionnaire français-haoussa et haoussa-français, précédé d'un essai de grammaire de la langue haoussa (parlée par les nègres du Soudan). With a large map of North Africa. xlv. and 380 pp. large 8vo. 1886. 16s.
- MAGÁNA HAUSA.** Native Literature; or, Proverbs, Tales, Fables, Historical Fragments in the Hausa Language, with a translation in English. By J. F. Schoen. 12mo. cloth, pp. xx. and 288. 1835. 4s.
- ROBINSON** (O. H.). Specimens of Hausa literature; Hausa text (in Roman characters) with English translation, facsimile of the Hausa text and notes. xix. 112 pp. and facsimile plates, large 8vo. cloth. 1896. 10s. 6d.  
Edition without the text in facsimile, 5s.
- Hausa grammar, with exercises, readings, and a vocabulary, 123 pp., with a facsimile specimen of Hausa MS. in Arabic characters. 8vo. cloth. 1897. 5s. Forms a volume of Trübner's Collection of Simplified Grammars.
- Hausa dictionary in preparation.
- SCHOEN** (J. F.). *Fārawá Letáfin Magána Hausa*, a Primer and Vocabulary in the Hausa Language. 2 parts. 8vo. cloth, pp. 53 and 46. 1857. 2s. 6d.
- Grammar of the Hausa Language. 8vo. cloth, pp. xiv. and 234. 1862. 5s.
- Vocabulary of the Hausa Language. Part I. English and Hausa. Part II. Hausa and English; and Phrases and Specimens of Translations, to which are prefixed the grammatical elements of the Hausa language. pp. vi. and 220, 8vo. 1843. 5s.
- Appendix to the Dictionary of the Hausa Language (published 1876), Hausa-English Part, with additions of Hausa Literature. Post 8vo. cloth, pp. iv. and 206. 1888. 5s. Printed in Roman characters only. The dictionary, which was published in 1876, is out of print.
- Hausa Reading Book, with the rudiments of grammar and vocabularies, and travellers' *vade mecum*. 8vo. 1877. 2s. 6d.

**HERERÓ (SOUTH-WEST AFRICA).**

- BRINCKER** (H.). Wörterbuch und kurzgefasste Grammatik des Otji-héero mit Beifügung verwandter Ausdrücke und Formen des Oshi-ndonga-Otjambo, herausgegeben von C. G. Büttner. 351 and 31 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1886. 25s.
- HAHN** (C. H.). Grundzüge einer Grammatik des Hereró (im Westlichen Afrika), nebst einem Wörterbuche, with grammatical tables. 8vo. pp. xi. and 197. 1857. 6s.
- KOLBE** (F. W.) An English-Herero Dictionary, with an introduction to the study of Herero and Bantu in general. Post 8vo. cloth. pp. lv. and 569. 1883. 15s.

**IBO, or IGBO (NORTH-EAST OF THE NIGER DELTA).**

- CROWTHER** (Bishop S.). Vocabulary of the Ibo language. 2 vols. 5s.  
Part I. Ibo-English. viii. and 109 pp. small 8vo. 1882.  
Part II. English-Ibo, by J. F. Schoen. 90 pp. post 8vo. 1833.  
Single volumes are sold separately at 3s. each.
- SCHOEN** (J. F.). Grammatical Elements of the Ibo language. 12mo. cloth, pp. 94. 1861. 2s.

**IDZO, or IDSO (NIGER DELTA).**

- CAREW** (W. E. L.). Primer in the Ubani dialect of the Idso language. 27 pp. 8vo. limp cloth. 1s. 6d.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

**KABÁIL**

(HAMITIC LANGUAGE, NORTH COAST OF AFRICA).

- AHMED BEN KHOUAS.** Notions succinctes de grammaire kabyle. 86 pp. 12mo. 1881. 2s.
- BASSET (R.).** Manuel de langue kabyle (dialecte Zouaoua), contenant grammaire, bibliographie, chrestomathie et lexique. 8vo. cloth. 1887. 7s. 6d.
- BELKASSEM BEN SEDIRA.** Cours de langue kabyle (dialecte Zouaoua), grammaire, versions, contes, fables, &c. 248 and 430 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1887. 8s. 6d.
- CREUSAT.** Essai de dictionnaire français-kabyle (Zouaoua) précédé des éléments de cette langue. 12mo. 5s.
- HANOTEAU (A.).** Essai de grammaire kabyle renfermant les principes du langage parlé par les populations du versant nord du Jurjura, et spécialement par les Igaouaouen ou Zouaoua, suivi de notes et d'une notice sur quelques inscriptions en caractères dits Tifinar' et en langue Tamacher't. Large 8vo. sewed, pp. xxiv. and 393. Out of print. 1858. 15s.
- NEWMAN (F. W.)** Kabail Vocabulary. Supplemented by Aid of a New Source. pp 124, crown 8vo. cloth. 1887. 5s.
- OLIVIER.** Dictionnaire français-kabyle. 316 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1878. 6s.

**KAFFA (A DIALECT OF GONGA, S.-W. ABYSSINIA).**

- REINISCH (L.).** Die Kafa-sprache in Nordost Africa. 2 parts. 93 and 138 pp. 8vo. 1888. 4s.

**KAGURU.**

- LAST (J. T.).** Grammar of the Kaguru language Eastern Equatorial Africa. 147 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1886. 2s.

**KAMBA**

(EASTERN BANTU LANGUAGE IN EASTERN EQUATORIAL AFRICA).

- LAST (J. T.).** Grammar of the Kamba Language (Eastern Equatorial Africa). 8vo. cloth, pp. 40. 1885. 2s.

**KAVIRÓNDÓ (EAST OF VICTORIA NYANZA).**

- WAKEFIELD (M.).** Vocabulary of the Kaviróndo Language. 8vo. pp. 7. 1887. 1s.

**KIBANGI (UPPER KONGO).**

- SIMS (A.).** Vocabulary of Kibangi as spoken by the Babangi (commonly called Bayansi) on the Upper Kongo from Kwa Mouth (Kasai) to Liboko (Bangala). 111 pp. 8vo. 1886. 3s. 6d.

**KILOLO or LUNKUNDU (UPPER KONGO).**

- EDDIE (J. B.).** Vocabulary of Kilolo as spoken by the Bankundu, a section of the Balolo tribe at Ikengo, with a few introductory notes on the grammar. 203 pp. small 8vo. 1887. 8s.
- McKITTRICH (J. and F. T.).** Guide to the Lunkundu language. 230 pp. 8vo. 1893. 4s. 6d.
- [HAILES (L. M.).]** Kilolo-English vocabulary. 159 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 2s. 6d.

*African Languages—Kiniassa, Kisukuma, Kiteke, Ki-Tikuu. 17*

**KINIASSA (LAKE NYASSA).**

**REBMAN (J.).** Dictionary of the Kiniassa Language. Edited by L. Krapf. 8vo. cloth, pp. viii. and 182. 1877. 5s.

**KISUKUMA (ON VICTORIA NYANZA).**

**SEIDEL (A.).** Das Kisukuma. Grammatische Skizze mit kisukuma-deutsch und deutsch-kisukuma Wörterbuche. 18 pp. 8vo. 1894. 1s. 6d.

**KITEKE (SPOKEN BY THE BATEKES ON THE UPPER CONGO).**

**SIMS (A.).** English-Kiteke Vocabulary. 190 pp. small 8vo. boards. 1886. 4s.

**KI-TIKUU and KI-POKOMO (SWAHILI DIALECTS).**

**WÜRTZ (F.) and SEIDEL (A.).** Wörterbuch der Ki-Tikuu und der Ki-Pokomo Sprachen in Ost Africa. 63 pp. large 8vo. 1895. 6s.

**KONGO. (SEE ALSO UNDER "FIOTE.")**

**A. M. D. G.** Eléments de la langue congolaise, suivie d'un choix de phrases et de deux vocabulaires. 95 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1895. 2s. 6d.

**BARFIELD (J.).** The Concord of the Congo Language as spoken at Palaballa, being a contribution to the Syntax of the Congo Tongue, with illustrative sentences. 160 pp. 8vo. half calf. 1884. 4s.

**BENTLEY (W. H.).** Dictionary and Grammar of the Congo Language, as spoken at San Salvador, the ancient capital of the old Congo Empire, West Africa. xxiv. and 718 pp. 8vo. 1887. £1 1s.

— Appendix to it, forming pp. 719–1052 of the entire work. 8vo. cloth. 1895. 10s. 6d.

**BRUSCIOTTO.** Grammar of the Congo Language as spoken 200 years ago, translated from the Latin by H. Grattan Guinness. pp. xii. and 112, 8vo. cloth. 1882. 8s.

**CAMBIER.** Essai sur la langue congolaise. 124 pp. interleaved, small 8vo. 1891. 4s.

**CRAVEN (H.) and BARFIELD (J.).** English-Congo and Congo-English Dictionary, with Appendix containing useful sentences. pp. xii. 284 and xix. 8vo. half bound. 1883. 6s.

**GUINNESS (H. G.).** Grammar of the Congo Language as spoken in the cataract region below Stanley Pool. 267 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1882. Scarce. 10s. 6d.

**KUNAMA (ABYSSINIA).**

**REINISCH (L.).** Die Kunama-Sprache in Nordost-Afrika. In 4 parts. 90, 96, 112, and 136 pp. 8vo. 1881–91. 8s.

**KWAFI, or WAKUAFI (EAST AFRICA).**

**KRAPF (Rev. Dr. J. L.).** Vocabulary of the Engútuk Eloiköb, or the Language of the Wakuafi-Nation in the Interior of Equatorial Africa. 8vo. cloth, pp. 144. 1854. 3s. 6d.

**LIBYAN.**

**NEWMAN (F. W.).** Libyan Vocabulary, an essay towards reproducing the ancient Numidian language out of four modern tongues. 204 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1882. 10s. 6d.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House, Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

**LUBA (CENTRAL AFRICA).**

*About 5° North Lat., 30° East of Greenwich.*

**SWAN (C. A.).** Notes on the grammatical construction of Chiluba as spoken in Garenganze (Central Africa), with brief vocabularies in Luba-English and English-Luba, and six chapters in Chiluba from the Gospel of St. John. 63 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1892. 3s.

**LUGANDA, RUGANDA, or GANDA**

(SPOKEN IN THE UGANDA COUNTRY ON THE VICTORIA NYANZA).

**MANUEL DE LANGUE LUGANDA** comprenant la grammaire et un recueil de contes et de légendes. Second edition. 286 pp. small 8vo. 1894. 10s. 6d.

**O'FLAHERTY (Ph.).** Collection for a Luganda-English and English-Luganda Lexicon. 41 pp. 8vo. cloth. No date (1894). 2s.

**PILKINGTON (G. L.).** Handbook of Luganda. 93 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1892. 2s.

**PRIMER.** Letters and Syllables, and the Commandments in the Luganda Language [Ekitabo ekyo kusoka]. Feap. 8vo. boards, pp. 14. London, 1887. 1s. 6d.

**WILSON (C. T.).** An Outline Grammar of the Luganda Language, with an English-Luganda and Luganda-English Vocabulary. Feap. 8vo. cloth. 1883. 3s.

**LUNDA (LANGUAGE OF CENTRAL AFRICA SOUTH OF EQUATOR).**

**CARVALHO (H. A. Dias de).** Metodo pratico para fallar a lingua da Lunda. xxii. and 391 pp. 8vo. 1890. 16s.

Contains a grammar, chrestomathy, dictionary, &c.

**MAKUA (MOÇAMBIQUE).**

**AYRES DE CARVALHO (Soveral).** Breve estudo sobre a ilha de Moçambique acompanhado d'um pequeno vocabulario Portuguez-Macúá. 31 pp. 8vo. 1887. 2s.

**MAPLES (C.).** Collections for a Handbook of the Makua Language. 100 pp. small 8vo. cloth. No date (1879). 2s. 6d.

**RANKIN (D. J.).** Arab Tales. Translated from the Swahili Language into the Tígulu Dialect of the Mákuá Language, as spoken in the immediate vicinity of Mozambique. Together with comparative vocabularies of five Dialects of the Mákuá Language. Cr. 8vo. boards, pp. xv. and 46. 1887. 3s. 6d.

**MALAGASY.**

**ABINAL et MALZAC.** Dictionnaire malgache-français. 815 pp. 8vo. half calf. 1888. £1 5s.

**COUSINS (W. E.).** A concise Introduction to the study of the Malagasy Language, as spoken in Imerina. Third edition, enlarged. pp. iv. and 80, 8vo. cloth. 1894. 5s.

**DALMOND.** Vocabulaire et grammaire pour les langues malgaches, sakalave et betsimitsara. 142 pp. small 4to. 1842. 16s.

Vocabulaire franç.-malgache, suivi d'une petite grammaire et de traductions littérales malgache-franç.

**ENGLISH and Malagasy Vocabulary,** with sentences in both languages illustrating the words used in the Vocabulary. Compiled by three native officials. 476 pp. 8vo half calf. 1863. 10s. 6d.

- KESSLER** (J.). Introduction to the Language and Literature of Madagascar, with hints to travellers, and a map. 90 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1870. 4s. 6d.
- MARRE** (A.). Grammaire malgache suivie de nombreux exercices. Second edition. 155 and xxiv. pp. small 8vo. boards. 1894. 5s.
- Vocabulaire français-malgache. 391 pp. 8vo. boards. 1895. 8s.
- PARKER** (G. W.). Concise Grammar of the Malagasy Language. pp. 66, with an Appendix, crown 8vo. cloth. 1883. 5s.
- Forms a volume of "Trübner's Collection of Simplified Grammars."
- RAHIDY** (B.). Cours pratique de langue malgache. In 3 vols. small 8vo. cloth.
- Vol. I. Grammaire. 103 pp. 1895. 3s. 6d.
- Vol. II. Dialogues usuels et vocabulaire français-malgache. 291 pp. 1895. 4s.
- Vol. III. Exercices et vocabulaire malgache-français. 142 pp. 1895. 4s.
- RICHARDSON** (J.). Malagasy for Beginners: a series of Graduated Lessons and Exercises in Malagasy, as spoken by the Hovas. 120 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1884. 4s.
- RICHARDSON** (Rev. J.). New Malagasy-English Dictionary. Edited and re-arranged. lix. and 832 pp. half bound, 8vo. 1885. £1.
- SARDA** (P.). Petit dictionnaire malgache-français, précédé des principes de grammaire hova et suivi des phrases et expressions usuelles. 32 and 150 pp. small 8vo. 1896. 2s. 6d.
- SEWELL** (J. S.). English-Malagasy Dictionary. 380 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1875. 12s. 6d.
- VOCABULAIRE** français-malgache rédigé par les Missionnaires Catholiques à l'usage de leurs élèves qui apprennent le français. pp. 418, 8vo. cloth. 1880. 10s.
- New edition of 1894, 8vo. cloth. £1 5s.

#### **MANDE (SOUDAN).**

- RAMBAUD** (J. B.). Dictionnaire français-mandé. 131 pp. 8vo. 1896. 5s.
- Avec une introduction sur la langue mandé et les caractères distinctifs de cette langue et de ses divers dialectes et avec un abrégé de grammaire mandé.
- STEINTHAL** (H.). Die Mande-Neger-Sprachen psychologisch und phonetisch betrachtet. pp. xxiv. and 344, royal 8vo. 1867. 6s.

#### **MASAI.**

- ERHARDT** (Rev. J.). Vocabulary of the Enguduk Iloigob, as spoken by the Masai Tribes in East Africa. pp. 110, 8vo. cloth. 1857. 2s. 6d.

#### **MASHONA, or SHUNA (SOUTH-EAST AFRICA).**

- HARTMANN** (Rev. A. M.). Outline of a grammar of the Mashona language. vii. and 69 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1893. 5s.
- English-Mashona Dictionary, with appendix of some phrases. 78 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894. 6s.

#### **MATABELE and MAKALAKA (SOUTH-EAST AFRICA).**

- ELLIOTT** (W. A.). Dictionary of the Tebele and Shuna languages. xxxiii. and 441 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1897. 10s. 6d.
- WEALE** (M. E.). Matabele and Makalaka vocabulary, intended for the use of prospectors and farmers in Mashonaland. 32 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1893. 5s.

**MAURITIUS.**

**BAISSAC (C.).** Étude sur le patois créole mauricien. 233 pp. small 8vo. 1880. 5s.

**MUSUK (SPOKEN SOUTH OF THE TSHAD LAKE).**

**MÜLLER (F.).** Die Musuksprache in Central Africa nach den Aufzeichnungen von G. A. Krause herausgegeben, mit dem Musuk-deutschem Vocabular und einer Karte. 70 pp. 8vo. 1886. 2s. 6d.

**MWAMBA (NORTH OF LAKE NYASSA).**

**BAIN (J. A.).** Collections of the Mwamba language spoken at the north end of Lake Nyassa. 32 pp. 12mo. 1891. 2s.

**NAGOE (SUB-DIALECT OF DAHOMY).**

**BOUCHE (P.).** Étude sur la langue Nago (Yoruba). 51 pp. 8vo. 1880. 2s. 6d.

**NAMAQUA, or NAMA**

(HOTTENTOTS OF THE SOUTH-WEST COAST).

**CHARENCEY (H. de).** Elements de la grammaire hottentote (dialecte Nama). 20 pp. 8vo. 1864. 2s.

**HAHN (Th.).** Die Sprache der Nama. 52 pp. 8vo. 1870. 2s. 6d.

**KRÄNLEIN (J. G.).** Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin (Namaqua-Hottentotten). Roy. 8vo. pp. vi. and 350. 1889. £1 5s.

**OLPP (J.).** Nama-Deutsches Woerterbuch. 118 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1888. 3s.

**SCHILS (G. H.).** Grammaire complète de la langue des Namas. xxi. and 94 pp. large 4to. 1891. 15s.

——— Dictionnaire etymologique de la langue des Namas. 106 pp. 4to. 1895. £1 1s.

**WALLMANN (J. C.).** Formenlehre der Namaqua-Sprache. 95 pp. 8vo. 1857. 3s.

**NGONI (SOUTH BANK OF THE ZAMBESI).**

**ELMSLIE (W. A.).** Introductory grammar of the Ngoni (Zulu) language, as spoken in Mombera's country. 51 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 5s.

——— Table of Concords and Paradigm of Verb of the Ngoni language, as spoken in Mombera's country. Large folio, folded in book form. 1891. 6s.

**NIAM-NIAM**

(IDENTIC WITH NYANJA, FOR WHICH SEE).

**COLOMBAROLI (A.).** Premiers Éléments de Langue A-Sandeh (vulgairement appelée Niam-Niam). 99 pp. 8vo. 1895. 4s.

**NIKA, or MA-NIKA, or NYIKA**

(EAST COAST OF AFRICA, TWO DEGREES SOUTH OF POKOMO RIVER).

**KRAPF (L.) and REBMANN (J.).** A Nika-English Dictionary. Edited by T. H. Sparshott. pp. viii. and 391, 8vo. cloth. 1887. 10s. 6d.

**NUBIAN**

(NILE-VALLEY FROM THE TROPIC OF CANCER TO THE FRONTIER OF ABYSSINIA).

**LEPSIUS** (R.). Nubische Grammatik. Mit Einleitung über die Völker und Sprachen Afriká's. 8vo. cloth, pp. exxxvi. and 506. 1880. (Pub. £1 6s.) £1 1s.

**REINISCH** (L.). Die Nuba Sprache.

Vol. I. Grammatik und Texte. 308 pp. 8vo. 1879. 7s. 6d.

Vol. II. Nubisch-deutsches und deutsch-nubisches Woerterbuch. 240 pp. 8vo. 1879. 7s. 6d.

**NUPE (BASIN OF THE QUORRA).**

**CROWTHER** (S.). Primer of the Nupe Language. pp. 22, small 8vo. limp cloth. 1860. 1s. 6d.

— Elements of a Grammar and Vocabulary of the Nupe Language. 208 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1864. 6s.

**J[OHNSON]** (H.). Nupe Reading Book for the use of schools. 48 pp. 8vo. 1882. 1s. 6d.

**NYAMWEZI.**

**STEERE** (Ed.). Collections for a Handbook of the Nyamwezi Language as spoken at Unyanembe. 99 pp. small 8vo. cloth. (No date.) 1s. 6d.

**NYANJA, CHINYANJA, or MANGANJA**

(BANTU LANGUAGE SPOKEN S. AND S.-W. OF LAKE NYASSA).

**CALDWELL** (R.). Chi-Nyanja Simplified. Second Edition. 88 and 46 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1897. 2s. 6d.

**HENRY** (G.). Grammar of the Chinyanja [spoken near the shores of Lake Nyassa]. 232 pp. post 8vo. 1891. 9s.

**LAWS** (R.). Table of Concords and Paradigm of verbs of the Chinyanja language (Lake Nyassa). Large folio, folded in book form. 1885. 5s.

— English-Nyanja Dictionary, with a table of Concords of the Chinyanja language. 231 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1894. 7s. 6d.

**RIDDEL** (A.). A Grammar of the Chinyanja language as spoken at Lake Nyassa, with Chinyanja-English and English-Chinyanja Vocabularies. 150 pp. small 8vo. 1880. Out of print. 6s.

**SCOTT** (Rev. D. C.). Cyclopædic Dictionary of the Mang'anja language (usually called Nyanja), spoken in British Central Africa [Mang'anja-English and English-Mang'anja]. 737 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1892. 12s. 6d.

[F. A. R.] Vocabulary of English-Chinyanja and Chinyanja-English, as spoken at Likoma, Lake Nyasa. 2nd edition. 88 pp. with table of Concords, small 8vo. limp cloth. 1895. 1s. 6d.

**OSHIKUANJAMA (GERMAN SOUTH-WEST AFRICA).**

**BRINCKER** (P. H.). Lehrbuch des Oshikuanjama [Bantu-Sprache in Deutsch Suedwest-Afrika].

Vol. I. Grammatik des Oshikuanjama in Verbindung mit Oshindonga und mit Vergleichung des Otjihéero. 118 pp.

Vol. II. Woerterbuch des Oshikuanjama mit Vergleichung des Oshindonga und Otjihéero in zwei Theilen sachlich-geordnet. 136 pp.

Two vols. bound in one. 8vo. cloth. 1891. 16s.

Forms Vol. VIII. of the "Lehrbuecher des Seminars fuer orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin."

**PONGWE, or MPONGWE**

- (FRENCH WESTERN AFRICA, BETWEEN THE SENEGAL AND GAMBIA).  
**GRAMMAR** of the Mpongwe Language, with Vocabularies. By the Missionaries of the A.B.C.F.M. Gaboon Mission, Western Africa. pp. 94, 8vo. Scarce. 1847. 10s. 6*d.*  
**DELORME** (A.). Dictionnaire français-pongoué par les missionnaires de la Congrégation du St. Esprit. 354 pp. 8vo. 1877. 10s.  
**GACHON**. Dictionnaire pongoué-français, précédé des principes de la langue pongouée par les missionnaires de la Congrégation du St. Esprit. xxxix. and 288 pp. 8vo. 1881. 8s.  
**LE BERRE**. Grammaire de la langue pongouée (parlée au Gabon et au Sénégal). pp. 223, 8vo. 1873. 6s.  
**LEJEUNE** (Père). Dictionnaire français-fangou pahouin précédé de quelques principes grammaticaux sur cette même langue. 347 pp. 8vo. half calf. 1892. 10s.

**QUARA (ABYSSINIA).**

- REINISCH** (L.). Die Quara-sprache in Abessinien. 3 parts, 8vo. 1885-87. 7s. 6*d.*

**RONGA, or SHIRONGA, the language of the Shangani.**

(DELAGOA BAY).

- JUNOD** (H. A.). Abécédaire et livre de lecture en dialect ronga (Baie de Delagoa). 94 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894. 2s.  
 ——— Grammaire ronga, suivie d'un manuel de conversation et d'un vocabulaire ronga-portugais-français-anglais. 308 pp. large 8vo. 1896. 5s.  
**SMITH-DELACOUR** (E. W.). A Shironga vocabulary: or word-book on the language of the natives in the district of Delagoa Bay. 31 pp. 8vo. 1893. 4s.

**SAGÁRA, or MÉGI, or KGÚRU (BANTU LANGUAGE, NORTH OF LUFIJI RIVER, EAST EQUATORIAL AFRICA).**

- LAST** (J. T.). Grammar of the Kagúru Language (Eastern Equatorial Africa). Small 8vo. cloth, pp. 147. 1886. 2s.

**SAHO.**

- REINISCH** (L.). Die Sprache der Irob-Saho in Abessinien. 56 pp. 8vo. 1878. 1s. 6*d.*  
**REINISCH** (L.). Saho-Sprache.  
 Vol. I.—Texte der Saho Sprache mit deutscher Uebersetzung. 315 pp. 8vo. 1889. 8s.  
 Vol. II.—Saho-Deutsches Woerterbuch. 492 pp. 8vo. 1890. £1 4s.

**SHAMBAA, or SHAMBALA (GERMAN EAST AFRICA).**

- SEIDEL** (A.). Handbuch der Shambala Sprache in Usambara. With texts in Shambala, and a German-Shambala and Shambala-German vocabulary. 140 pp. 8vo. 1895. 5s.  
**WOHLRAB** and **JOHANSEN**. Shambaa Lesefibel. 48 pp. small 8vo. 1892. 1s. 6*d.*

## SOMALI

(FROM THE STRAITS OF BĀB EL MANDAL, ROUND BY CAPE  
GUARDAFUL, DOWN TO THE 4° SOUTHERN LATITUDE).

**LIGHT** (R. H.). English-Somali Sentences and Idioms for the use of sportsmen and visitors in Somaliland. 23 pp. small 8vo. 1896. 2s.  
Printed in Roman characters only.

**LARAJASSE** (de). Somali-English and English-Somali Dictionary. 301 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1897. 12s.

— and **CYPRIEN DE SAMPONT**. Practical Somali Grammar, with a manual of sentences. 265 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1897. 12s.  
Both works are printed in Roman characters only.

**SCHLEICHER** (A. W.). Die Somali Sprache, I. Text, Lautlehre, Formenlehre und Syntax. xvi. and 159 pp. 8vo. 1892. 6s.  
Part II. will never be published, as the author died in Africa.

## SUSOO, or SOSO (MANDINGO DIALECT OF SENEGAMBIA).

**DOUGLIN** (Rev. P. H.). A Reading Book in the Soso Language. pp. viii. and 120, small 8vo. cloth. 1887. 2s. 6d.

**DUPORT** (J. H.). Outlines of a Grammar of the Susu Language (West Africa). pp. 28, 8vo. No date (1882). 1s. 6d.

**ENDEMANN** (K.). Versuch einer Grammatik des Sotho. 201 pp. 8vo. 1876. 6s.

Printed in Roman characters only.

OUTLINES of a Grammar in the Susu Language. 8vo. sewed. 1s. 6d.

**RAIMBAULT**. Dictionnaire français-soso et soso-français. pp. x. and 165, small 8vo. cloth. 1885. 7s. 6d.

## SWAHILI, or KISUAHILI.

**BUETTNER** (C. G.). Suaheli-deutsch und deutsch-suaheli Woerterbuch. ix. and 269 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1890. 13s. 6d.

Forms Vol. III. of the "Lehrbücher des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin."

— Suaheli-Schriftstücke, in Arabic and Roman characters, with German translation and notes. xi. and 206 and 73 pp. and 11 lithographic plates, 8vo. 1892. £1 2s. 6d.

Forms Vol. X. of the "Lehrbücher des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin."

— Lieder und Geschichten der Suaheli [in German, being the second vol. of the "Suaheli Anthologie," by the same author]. 202 pp. 8vo. 1894. 4s.

— Anthologie aus der Suaheli-Litteratur (Gedichte und Geschichten). Vol. I. Swahili text in Roman characters. Vol. II. German translation. 188 and 202 pp. in one vol. 8vo. 1894. 18s.

**DAULL**. Grammaire kisouahili. 125 pp. 12mo. bound. 1879. 2s. 6d.

**DELAUNAY**. Grammaire kiswahili. 173 pp. small 8vo. boards. 1885. 6s.

**KRAPF** (L.). Outline for the Elements of the Kiswahili Language, with special reference to the Kinika dialect. 142 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1850. 7s. 6d.

— Dictionary of the Swahili Language. With Introduction containing an outline of a Swahili Grammar. pp. xl. and 433, roy. 8vo. cloth. 1882. (Pub. £1 10s.) 10s. 6d.

**MADAN** (A. C.). English-Swahili Vocabulary, compiled from the Works of the late Bishop Steere and from other sources. pp. 56, 8vo. cloth. 1885. 2s.

- MADAN** (A. C.). English-Swahili Dictionary, compiled for the use of the Universities Mission to Central Africa. vi. and 415 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1894. 7s. 6d.
- NETTELBLADT** (F. v.). Suaheli Dragoman. xii. and 256 pp. 8vo. 1891. 5s.  
CONTENTS.—Gespräche, Wörterbuch und praktische Anleitungen zum Verkehr mit den Eingeborenen in Deutsch Ost-Afrika, mit Vorwort von L. von Gravenreuth.
- RADDATZ** (H.). Die Suahili-Sprache mit einem Anhang: Sudau-Arabisch und Einführung in die Bantusprachen. xiv. and 176 pp. 8vo. 1892. 3s. 6d.
- SACLEUX** (Ch.). Dictionnaire français-swahili. 989 and 40 pp. post 8vo. half calf. 1891. £1 1s.  
Added is: Catalogue des plantes de Zanzibar, Pemba, Mombassa, Amou, &c.
- SAINT PAUL ILLAIRE** (W.). Suaheli Handbuch. 202 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1890. 10s. 6d.  
Forms Vol. II. of the "Lehrbücher des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen."  
— Swahili Sprachführer. 575 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1896. 10s.
- SEIDEL** (A.). Praktische Grammatik der Suaheli-Sprache, mit Uebungstuecken, einem Lesebuche und einem deutsch-kisnaheli Woerterbuche. 182 pp. 12mo. cloth. No date (1896). 2s. 6d.  
Forms Vol. XXXII. of the "Kunst der Polyglottie."
- STEERE** (E.). Handbook of the Swahili Language, as spoken at Zanzibar. Fourth edition. Revised and enlarged by A. C. Madan. 8vo. pp. xxii. and 458. 1894. (Pub. at 6s.) 4s.  
— Swahili Exercises. pp. viii. and 118. 8vo. boards. 1886. 2s. 6d.  
— Swahili Tales as told by natives of Zanzibar, Swahili text with transliteration in Roman characters, an English translation, and notes. xvi. and 501 pp. post 8vo. N.D. (1889). 5s.
- SYLLABAIRE** swahili. 64 pp. 12mo. 1893. 2s.
- TAYLOR** (W. E.). African Aphorisms; or, Saws from Swahiland collected, translated, and annotated. 8vo. cloth. 3s.

### TAITA

- (1° SOUTH OF THE POKOMO RIVER, IN EASTERN EQUATORIAL AFRICA).
- WRAY** (J. A.). Elementary Introduction to the Taita Language [Eastern Equatorial Africa]. 128 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894. 2s.
- TAMÁSHEK, or TUWARIK** (NOMADIC TRIBES, WESTERN SAHARA).
- FREEMAN** (H. S.). Grammatical Sketch of the Temahuq or Towarek Language. 47 pp. 8vo. cloth, out of print. 1862. 5s.
- HANOTEAU** (A.). Essai de grammaire de la langue Tamachek (Touareg) 2ième édition, renfermant les principes du langage parlé par les Imouchar ou Touareg, des conversations en Tamashek, des facsimile d'écriture en caractères Tifinar et une carte indiquant les parties de l'Algérie où la langue berbère est encore en usage. 31, 299 pp. 8vo. 1896. 15s.
- KAOUÏ** (S. Cid.). Dictionnaire français-tamâheq (langue des Touaregs). 894 pp. 4to. lithographed. 1894. £2 2s.
- MASQUERAY** (E.). Dictionnaire français-touareg (dialecte des Taitoq) suivi d'observations grammaticales. Parts 1 to 3 (as far as published). pp. 1-362. 8vo. 1893-95. 6s. each part.

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

**MASQUERAY (E.).** Observations grammaticales sur la grammaire Touareg et textes de la Tamahaq des Taïtoq, publiés par R. Basset et Gaudefroy-Demombynes. Part I. 96 pp. 8vo. 1896. 5s.

**TEMNE (SIERRA LEONE, WEST AFRICA).**

**ELBA (A. A.) and COLE (E. T.).** Temne Reading Book. 32 pp. 12mo. limp cloth. 1892. 1s. 6d.

**KNOEDLER (C.).** A Temne Primer for the use of Temne Schools in West Africa. 20 pp. 12mo. 1865. 1s. 6d.

**SCHLENKER (Rev. C. F.).** Grammar of the Temne Language. 8vo. cloth. 1864. 7s. 6d.

— An English-Temne Dictionary. pp. viii. and 403, 8vo. cloth. 1880. 10s. 6d.

— A Collection of Temne Traditions, Fables, and Proverbs, with an English Translation, as also some Specimens of the Author's own Temne Compositions and Translations. To which is appended a Temne-English Vocabulary. pp. xxii. and 298, 8vo. cloth. 1861. 6s.

**TENERIFFE.**

**BUTE (Marquess of).** On the Ancient Language of the Natives of Teneriffe. 8vo. 1891. 2s.

**TIGRE**

(SEMITIC LANGUAGE NORTH OF THE RIVER TAKAZZÉ, IN ABYSSINIA).

**BEURMANN (M. von).** Vocabulary of the Tigré Language, with a grammatical sketch by A. Merx. viii. and 78 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1868. 2s. 6d.

**CAMPERIO (M.).** Manuale tigrè-italiano con due dizionarietti italiano-tigrè and tigrè-italiano e cartina dimostrativa degli idiomi parlati in Eritrea. 177 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894. 3s.

**MUNZINGER (W.).** Vocabulaire de la langue tigré [Tigré-French]. 8vo. pp. x. and 93. 1865. 3s.

The Tigré words are written in Ethiopian characters, with Roman transliteration.

**PERINI (R.).** Manuale. teorico-pratico della lingua tigré. 122 pp. 8vo. 1893. 3s. 6d.

**PRAETORIUS (F.).** Grammatik der Tigrina Sprache in Abessinien, hauptsächlich in der Gegend von Aksum und Adoa. Two parts. 367 pp. 8vo. 1871-72. (Pub. at 13s. 6d.) 10s.

All Tigrina words are printed in Ethiopian characters.

**SCHREIBER (J.).** Mannel de la langue tigrāi. Parlée au centre et dans le nord de l'Abyssinie.

Vol. I. pp. iv. and 93, 8vo. 1887. 6s.

Vol. II. Contents.—Tigrāi texts with French translation, notes, and a Tigrāi-French vocabulary. pp. 94-227, 8vo. 1893. 8s.

**VITO (L. de).** Grammatica elementare della lingua tigrigna. 87 pp. 8vo. 1895. 5s.

The Tigrigna words are printed in the Amharic character, with Roman transliteration.

— Vocabulario della lingua tigrigna con introduzione e indice italiano-tigrigna del Conti Rossini Carlo. 166 pp. large 8vo. cloth. 1896. 9s.

— Esercizi di lettura in lingua tigrigna. 69 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1894. 5s.

### TUMBUKA

(LANGUAGE OF THE PEOPLE LIVING IN SUBJECTION TO THE NGONI,  
ON THE WEST SIDE OF THE LAKE NYASSA).

ELMSLIE (W. A.). Table of Concorde and paradigm of verbs of the Tumbuka Language (as spoken in Mombera's country). Large folio, folded in book form. 1891. 6s.

### UMBUNDU

(THE LANGUAGE OF THE INHABITANTS OF BAILUNDU AND BIHE, AND  
OTHER COUNTRIES OF WEST CENTRAL AFRICA).

SANDERS (W. H.). Umbundu-English and English-Umbundu Vocabulary, containing a list of 3000 words. 76 pp. 12mo. boards. 1885. 7s. 6d.

STOVER (W. M.). Observations upon the grammatical structure and use of the Umbundu. 83 pp. 12mo. boards. 1885. 7s. 6d.

### VAI, or VEI

(SPOKEN ON THE BANKS OF THE GALLINA RIVER, AND AT CAPE MOUNT,  
IN THE LIBERIAN REPUBLIC).

KOELLE (S. W.). Outlines of a Grammar of the Vei Language, together with a Vei-English Vocabulary. With Appendix: an Account of the Discovery and Nature of the Vei Mode of Syllabic Writing. 8vo. cloth, pp. 256. Out of print. Scarce. 1854. 10s. 6d.

### WOLOF (SENEGAMBIA, WEST AFRICA).

BOILAT. Grammaire de la langue woloffe. 430 pp. roy. 8vo. 1858. 15s.

DARD (J.). Grammaire wolof; ou, méthode pour étudier la langue des noirs qui habitent les royaumes de Bourba-Yolof, de Walo, de Damel, de Bour-Sine, de Saloume, de Baole, en Sénégambie; suivie d'un appendice, où sont établies les particularités les plus essentielles des principales langues de l'Afrique Septentrionale. pp. x. xxii. and 214. 8vo. cloth. 1826. 6s.

——— Dictionnaire français-wolof et français-bambara, suivi du dictionnaire wolof-français. xxxii. and 300 pp. 8vo. 1825. 5s.

KOBÈS (A.). Grammaire de la langue wolof. vi. and 360 pp. 8vo. *St. Joseph de Ngasobil*, 1869. Scarce. £1 1s.

ROGER (de). Recherches philosophiques sur la langue oulofe suivies d'un vocabulaire abrégé français-ouloff. pp. 173, 8vo. 1829. 2s. 6d.

### XOSA, or K FIR.

BONATZ (T. A.). Anleitung zur Erlernung der Kaffer-Sprache nach T. W. Appleyard's Grammatik. pp. xii. and 292, 8vo. 1862. 6s.

CRAWSHAW (J.). First Kafir course. Second Edition. 133 pp. 8vo. boards. 1894. 5s.

McLAREN (J.). Introductory Kafir Grammar with progressive exercises. 112 pp. post 8vo. cloth. 1886. 5s.

NAGEL (E.). Prakt. Hilfsbuch der Kafern-Sprache. Zur leichteren Verstaendigung mit den eingeborenen Kaffern Süd-Africas. 8vo. pp. 43. 1887. 1s. 6d.

---

*Kegan Paul, Trench, Tribner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House,  
Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

## YAO

- (SOUTH AND EAST OF THE LAKE NYASSA, AS FAR AS THE COAST).  
**HYNDE** (R. S.). Second Yao-English primer. 104 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1894.  
 1s. 6d.  
**MAPLES** (Ch.). Yao-English Vocabulary, compiled from various sources.  
 114 pp. small 8vo. 1888. 5s.  
**STEERE** (E.). Collections for a Handbook of the Yao Language. 105 pp.  
 8vo. cloth. 1871. 2s.

## YORUBA (EASTERN HALF OF THE SLAVE COAST).

- BOWEN** (T. J.). Grammar and Dictionary of the Yoruba Language, with an  
 Introductory Description of the Country and People of Yoruba. 4to. pp.  
 228, with a map. 1858. Out of print. £1 5s.  
**CROWTHER** (S.). English-Yoruba and Yoruba-English vocabulary. vii. and  
 48 and 196 pp. 8vo. half calf. 1843. 6s.  
 No titlepage to this edition was ever printed.  
 ——— Grammar of the Yoruba Language. 52 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1852. 2s.  
 ——— Grammar of the Yoruba Language and Yoruba-English vocabulary,  
 together with introductory remarks by O. E. Vidal. v. 38, vii. 52, and  
 291 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1852. 7s. 6d.  
 ——— Vocabulary of the Yoruba Language (Yoruba-English only), together  
 with introductory remarks, by the Right Rev. O. E. Vidal. 8vo. cloth,  
 pp. viii. and 38 and 292. 1852. 6s.  
**RABAN** (J.). The Eyó Vocabulary (Dialect of Yoruba). Part II. Contents.—  
 Alphabet, Verbs, Nouns, Phrases, Sentences, and English-Eyó Vocabulary.  
 36 pp. 12mo. Scarce. 1832. 2s. 6d.  
**WOOD** (J. B.). Notes on construction of the Yoruba language. 48 pp. 8vo.  
 1879. 1s. 6d.

## ZULU-KAFIR. (SEE ALSO UNDER "NGONI.")

- AMBROSIUS**. Grammatik der Zulu-Kaffirischen Sprache. 210 pp. 8vo.  
 1890. 10s.  
**BOYCE** (W. B.). Grammar of the Kafir Language. 54 pp. 4to. 1834. Very  
 scarce. 15s.  
 ——— The same. Second Edition, augmented and improved by vocabulary  
 and exercises by W. J. Davis. 228 pp. 8vo. 1844. 9s.  
**COLENZO** (J. W.). First Steps in Zulu: being an elementary grammar  
 of the Zulu language. Fourth Edition. 161 pp. small 8vo. 1890.  
 7s. 6d.  
 ——— Zulu-English Dictionary. 552 pp. 8vo. half calf. 1861. 6s.  
 ——— Zulu-English Dictionary. Second Edition, revised and enlarged.  
 673 pp. small 8vo. cloth. 1884. 12s.  
**DÖHNE** (T. L.). Zulu-Kafir Dictionary, etymologically explained, with  
 copious illustrations and examples, preceded by an introduction on the  
 Zulu-Kafir language. pp. xiii. and 418, royal 8vo. Out of print. 1857.  
 £1 1s.  
**GIBBS** (S.). Easy Zulu Vocabulary and Phrase-book, with grammatical  
 notes. 53 pp. small 8vo. 1890. 3s. 6d.

- GROUT** (L.). The Isizulu: a grammar of the Zulu language, with a historical introduction. New Edition, revised. 313 pp. large 8vo. cloth. 1893. 16s.  
 ——— The same. First Edition. 432 pp. 8vo. 1859. (Pub. £1 1s.) 6s.  
 ——— Observations on the Prepositions, Conjunctions, and other Particles of the Isizulu and its cognate languages. 12 pp. 8vo. 1859. 1s. 6d.
- MATE** (Ph.). Kleines deutsch-kaffirisches Wörterbuch. 173 pp. small 8vo. bound. 1891. 3s.
- NG'UNEMO**, Isigama, *i.e.*, English-Kafir Vocabulary. 249 pp. 8vo. cloth. No date. 3s. 6d.
- NG'UNEMO**, Igrama Lesingisi, *i.e.*, English Grammar for Kafirs. 449 pp. 8vo. cloth. No date. 5s.
- PERRIN'S** English-Zulu Dictionary. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. 334 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1890. 4s.
- ROBERTS** (Ch.). English-Zulu Dictionary, with the principles of pronunciation and classification fully explained. Second Edition, with Supplement. 267 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1895. 5s.  
 ——— The Zulu-Kafir Language Simplified for Beginners. Third edition, enlarged. 177 pp. 8vo. cloth 1895. 6s.  
 pp. 123 to end contain an English-Zulu and Zulu-English Vocabulary.  
 ——— The South-African Traveller's Handbook, containing a brief outline of the Zulu-Kafir grammar and a large number of English words, sentences, and dialogues rendered in Zulu-Kafir, Xosa-Kafir, and Dutch. 172 pp. 12mo. cloth. 1879. Out of print. 6s.
- SCHREUDER** (H. P. S.). Grammatik der Zulu-Sproget. Fortale og anmaerkinger af C. A. Holmboe. 88 pp. 8vo. 1850. 5s.

---

## BOOKS ON AFRICA.

---

- AFRICA AND THE AMERICAN NEGRO.** Addresses and Proceedings of the Congress on Africa, held in Atalanta, U.S.A., in December, 1895. 242 pp. text, with numerous illustrations, 8vo. 1896. 7s. 6d.
- BIRD** (J.). Annals of Natal. 1495 to 1845. 2 vols. 732 and 484 pp. royal 8vo. cloth. 1888. £2.  
 The author had access to the archives of the Cape Government and to the Record Office in London, and has copied numerous official documents with permission of the Secretary of State.
- BURTON** (R. F.). Abeokuta and the Cameroons Mountains: an Exploration. 2 vols. With folded map. Fine half calf. 1863. Scarce. 25s.
- CAPE OF GOOD HOPE ARCHIVES.** Precis, edited by H. C. V. Leibbrandt. 8vo. Viz.:  
 Letters received from 1695 to 1708. 474 pp. 1896. 6s.  
 Letters dispatched from 1695 to 1708. 397 pp. 1896. 6s.  
 Journal from 1699 to 1732. 341 pp. 1896. 6s.  
 Defence of W. Adriaan van der Stel. 198 pp. 1897. 5s.
- DAUMAS** (E.). Les chevaux du Sahara et les meurs du désert. New Edition, revised and enlarged by Emir Abdel Kader. viii. and 544 pp. large 8vo. 1862. (Pub. 8s.) 4s.

---

*Keegan Paul, Trench, Trübner and Co., Limited, Paternoster House  
 Charing Cross Road, London: Oriental Catalogue No. X.*

- DRURY.** The Adventures of Robert Drury during Fifteen Years' Captivity on the Island of Madagascar. Containing a description of that island, to which is added a vocabulary of the Madagascar language. Written by himself, and now carefully revised and corrected from the original copy. xii. and 459 pp. large 8vo. 1807. 4s.
- ELLIS (A. B.).** The Tshi-speaking Peoples of the Gold Coast of West Africa, their religion, manners, customs, laws, language, etc. vii. and 343 pp. with map, large 8vo. cloth. 1887. (Pub. 10s. 6d.) 5s.
- The Ewe-speaking Peoples of the Slave Coast of West Africa, their religion, manners, customs, laws, languages, etc. viii. and 331 pp. with a map, large 8vo. cloth. 1890. (Pub. 10s. 6d.) 5s.
- A History of the Gold Coast of West Africa. xi. and 400 pp. with map, cloth, large 8vo. 1893. (Pub. 10s. 6d.) 5s.
- The Yoruba-speaking Peoples of the Slave Coast of West Africa, their religion, manners, customs, laws, language, etc., with an appendix containing a comparison of the Tshi, Gã, Ewe, and Yoruba languages. 402 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1894. (Pub. 10s. 6d.) 5s.
- EMIN PASHA IN CENTRAL AFRICA:** being a collection of his letters and journals. Edited and annotated by G. Schweinfurth, F. Ratzel, R. W. Felkin, and G. Hartlaub. Translated by Mrs. R. W. Felkin. With two portraits, a map, and notes. xviii. and 547 pp. large 8vo. cloth. 1888. (Pub. £1 1s.) 10s. 6d.
- FELKIN (R. W.).** Geographical Distribution of Tropical Diseases in Africa, with an appendix on a new method of illustrating the geographical distribution of disease. 79 pp. with table and map, 8vo. cloth. 1895. 5s.
- HUTTON (W.).** A Voyage to Africa, including a Narrative of an Embassy to one of the interior Kingdoms, in the year 1820. Illustrated with maps and plates. x. and 488 pp. large 8vo. half calf. 1821. 5s.
- KAUFMANN (W.).** The Egyptian State Debt and its relation to International Law, translated into English, with an historical retrospect since 1841, and numerous statistics by H. Wallach. 308 pp. 8vo. cloth. 1892. 8s.
- KINSKY (Count K.).** The Diplomatist's Handbook for Africa. 106 pp. With a Political Map. Roy. 8vo. cloth. 1897.
- Contains an historical and statistical abstract of all states in Africa and an enumeration of their treaties with European powers.
- KOELLE (S. W.).** African Native Literature; or Proverbs, Tales, Fables, and Historical Fragments in the Kanuri or Bornu Language, Kanuri Text, with English Translation and a Kanuri-English Vocabulary. 434 pp. 8vo. 1854. 7s. 6d.
- KRAPF (Rev. Dr. T. L.).** Travels, Researches, and Missionary Labours during an Eighteen Years' Residence in Eastern Africa. With portrait, maps, and illustrations of scenery and costume. li. and 566 pp. large 8vo. cloth. 1860. (Pub. £1 1s.) 10s. 6d.
- MACDONALD (Rev. Duff).** *Africana*; or, The Heart of Heathen Africa. 2 vols. large 8vo. cloth. 1882. (Pub. £1 1s.) 10s. 6d.
- CONTENTS.—Vol. I. Native Customs and Beliefs. xvi. and 301 pp.  
II. Mission Life. ix. and 371 pp.
- MÜLLER (Hendrik P. N.).** Industrie des Cafres du Sud-Est de l'Afrique. Collection recueillie sur les lieux et notice ethnographique avec description des objets représentés par Joh. F. Snelleman. 48 pp. text with 27 plates (some coloured), and music of Zambesi songs. Small folio. 1893. £1 10s.
- PAULITSCHKE (P.).** Die Africa Litteratur in der Zeit von 1500 bis 1750 n. Chr. Ein Beitrag zur geographischen Quellenkunde. 123 pp. large 8vo. 1882. 4s.

(Continued on page 2 of cover.)

# KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.

LIMITED,

PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD, LONDON.

## BOOKSELLING DEPARTMENT.

Our extensive connection in all important towns of British India and the Far East enables us to supply Oriental Books, Periodicals, and Newspapers rapidly to order. A large Stock of Modern and Old Oriental Books, especially on Philology, is always kept well assorted. Systematically arranged Catalogues are issued from time to time.

We have likewise special facilities to supply English and Continental Literature to Public Libraries and Residents in the East direct on the most advantageous conditions, and quicker than through other channels.

## PUBLISHING DEPARTMENT.

We beg to call the special attention of Authors and Learned Societies to this Branch of our Business, as we can command, thanks to our connection with Oriental Scholars, University and other Public Libraries and Institutions, a satisfactory sale of Books on Eastern topics, without having to incur heavy expenses for advertising.

☛ Copyrights of Books bought outright, or Books published on half share with Author, or on their account for a fixed commission, according to previous arrangement.

## Oriental Catalogue No. VIII. OF NEW & SECOND-HAND BOOKS ON THE GREAT ORIENTAL RELIGIONS.

### CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
COMPARATIVE, GENERAL, AND MISCELLANEOUS WORKS . . . . .	1-7	HINDUISM AND BRAHMANISM . . . . .	20-28
BUDDHISM AND LAMAISM . . . . .	7-16	MOHAMEDANISM . . . . .	28-31
CONFUCIANISM AND TAOISM . . . . .	16-18	PARSISM . . . . .	31-33
EGYPTIAN RELIGION . . . . .	18-20	SHINTOISM . . . . .	33-34
		THEOSOPHY . . . . .	34

ADDED IS A COMPLETE LIST OF

Trübner's English and Foreign Philosophical Library,

AND A SELECTION OF BOOKS ON THE

CHRISTIAN AND JEWISH RELIGIONS,

*Which are published by ourselves.*

## Oriental Catalogue No. IX.

CONTAINING BOOKS ON THE

Natural History and Medical Science of the East,

AND ON THE

Agriculture and Industries of the Tropics.







